

HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA P241/4

NOTE TO LEARNERS

whatever attempt you make you must back it with a strong introduction and conclusion. Failure to do that leads to loss of marks.

The introduction should be brief and clear. It should not be congested

Qn. 1 b) . Describe the origin of the San people of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION. (use any of the following introduction)

- The San were the earliest inhabitants of South Africa
- They were known by various names such as Roa by the Sotho, Twa by the Nguni, Bushmen by the Dutch
- The San belong to the Bushmanoid family/Khoisan
- They were very short with a yellowish or brownish color with heavy clicks in their language

BODY

- ❖ Their origin is not clear
- ❖ However they are believed to have come from East and central Africa.
- ❖ This is based on the many art paintings left in the caves of east and central Africa
- ❖ From East Africa they took southward route through central Africa into South Africa
- ❖ When they reached South Africa, they first settled in areas of Damaraland and Bechuanaland.
- ❖ Later they spread to areas of Orange Free State, Transvaal, Transkei, Griqualand West, Cape, Natal etc.
- ❖ Others occupied mountainous areas of Drakensberg, Brankenstein, Winterberg, Camdeboo
- ❖ Some went to hilly areas of Lesotho and Swaziland
- ❖ Some of them settled along rivers of Orange, Vaal, Kei, Tugela, etc due to the need for fishing
- ❖ With the coming of the Bantu and the Dutch the San were pushed into the Kalahari and Namib deserts.
- ❖ Today the San live in dry areas of Namibia, Angola and Botswana.

A conclusion is required for example:

- In conclusion the origin of the San people is not very clear, However they are believed to have come from East and Central Africa

Qn. 1 b) What factors forced the San into South Africa

INTRODUCTION

- The factors were political, social and economical in nature.

BODY

- ❖ Being hunters, they were looking for fresh hunting grounds
- ❖ Internal conflicts over different issues such as land, succession, etc
- ❖ Love for adventure especially the youth who wanted to discover new things
- ❖ The outbreak of drought and famine which brought about food shortages
- ❖ Over population in their home land which resulted into land struggles
- ❖ Presence of vast unoccupied land in the interior of south Africa
- ❖ The outbreak of diseases such as malaria, sleeping sickness etc. in their home land
- ❖ The need for fresh fishing grounds to supplement their diet
- ❖ The need for new areas to gather fruits, insects etc. as part of their foods.
- ❖ External attacks from hostile neighbors like e.g the Bantu
- ❖ Oppression in the camps.
- ❖ The nomadic nature of the san i.e they used to move from one place to another looking for fresh hunting grounds.

A conclusion is required for example

- The factors that forced the san to move into south Africa were both internal and external

Qn. 1 c) How were they organized before 1800?

INTRODUCTION

- The San were organized, socially economically and politically as follows

BODY

- ❖ **Socially** the San had heavy clicks in their language
- ❖ Family was the smallest basic social unit
- ❖ They carried out initiation ceremonies for all boys who wished to be called men .
- ❖ After the initiation ceremonies, boys were free to marry and it was done at a very early age the boy of 14 – 15 married a girl of 7 – 9 years.
- ❖ After marriage a bride groom stayed at the brides' home/ family and hunted for the in laws until the first born
- ❖ Hunting for the inlaws was paying the bride price
- ❖ The san marriage was polygamous and endogamous (married from the same family)
- ❖ However the San produced few children i.e 2 – 3 children
- ❖ They worshiped a god called KAGEUEN, the giver of wealth.
- ❖ Their god was manifested through the praying mantis which were highly respected
- ❖ They also offered sacrifice for their gods in form of animals and human being for rain and during war times.
- ❖ The san believed in life after death and they very much respected the graves of their ancestors
- ❖ They celebrated important moments like birth puberty, marriage etc.
- ❖ And was done by sprinkling the person with the gall of the sacrificed animal
- ❖ Their social affairs were decided by only male elders
- ❖ Women among the San were very courageous and gave birth alone without any attendant
- ❖ The san painted their homes with beautiful pictures because they were gifted with painting skills
- ❖ They lived in caves and other open protected areas such as under big tree branches
- ❖ They celebrated for the new and full moon
- ❖ They trained the youth to use traditional herbs to cure some diseases
- ❖ The San used to put on ornaments of ostrich, egg shells, fathers and animal skins

- ❖ They drunk fermented juice and honey during their leisure time
- ❖ The san gave much respect to the elders since they were regarded as sources of knowledge and wisdom.
- ❖ **Economically**, the San were great hunters and distinguished themselves as experts in tracking animals
- ❖ They hunted small animals using poisoned arrows and bows
- ❖ While large animals like elephants, pits were dug to trap them
- ❖ They gathered wild fruits, honey, locusts, white ants and caterpillars for food
- ❖ The San did not keep any domestic animals except dogs for hunting.
- ❖ They never cultivated the crops
- ❖ They carried out fishing in the near by rivers of Vaal, Kei, Tugela etc. to supplement their diet
- ❖ The San traded with their neighbors especially barter system where they gave them their hunted meat and got what they never had.
- ❖ The San traded with their neighbors especially barter system where they gave them hunted meat and got what they never had.
- ❖ Land among the was communally owned
- ❖ They had no idea of iron working but they made tools out of stone and sticks
- ❖ There was division of labour along sexual lines for example men hunted and women gathered fruits
- ❖ The San also raided the Khoikhoi for more food
- ❖ They furiously protected their hunting grounds
- ❖ **Politically** the san lived in small groups of about 25 – 70 people
- ❖ Their political set up was very weak i.e. a village could easily break up in case of big problems like famine/ had decentralized system.
- ❖ Each group was independent and there lived members related by either marriage or blood
- ❖ The San were ruled by elders of respectable age/ headmen.
- ❖ The headman ruled with the help of the council of elders which advised him and he ruled according to the customs of the society
- ❖ Regular council meetings were held to handle important political matters and membership was open to all male adults
- ❖ The headman exercised full ritual powers among the San
- ❖ The council of elders came from the leading family in the area
- ❖ Women among the San had no say in the politics i.e political affairs were determined by men only
- ❖ They were friendly to foreigners except when attacked.
- ❖ The San had not permanent army for defence but the youth were responsible for security
- ❖ San leaders had no permanent laws/ written constitution but they ruled according to society norms

A conclusion is required.

- In conclusion the san had a loose political structure.

Qn. 2 a) Describe the origin, movement and settlement of the Khoikhoi people

INTRODUCTION

- The Khoikhoi were the second inhabitants of south Africa
- They were short but slightly taller than the San with heavy clicks in their language
- They called themselves Khoikhoi meaning men of men and Dutch called them

Hottentots.

- The Khoikhoi belong to the Bushmanoid/ Khoisan family.

BODY

- ❖ Their origin is not very clear.
- ❖ However they are believed to have originated from East and central Africa
- ❖ This based on the many art paintings they left in the caves of East and central Africa
- ❖ Different theories have been suggested about their origin
- ❖ One theory states that they entered south Africa in four groups that is to say the Nama, Gona, Cochoqua and Korana
- ❖ The Nama moved west wards along river orange and settled in areas of Namibia.
- ❖ The Gona moved East wards into Fish river valley
- ❖ The Cochoqua moved south wards and settled in the coastal areas of Cape
- ❖ The Korana went to Giriqualand west.
- ❖ By the 15th century, the Portuguese found them around the Bays of Table, Mossel, Saldanha Vessel etc.
- ❖ Some say that they found some of them living between Atlantic and Buffalo coasts
- ❖ Others spread widely along the rivers of orange, Vaal Kei etc.
- ❖ By the 17th century, they were living in the Cape province, Transvaal, Natal, Orange free state etc.
- ❖ Some went into the mountainous areas of Drakensberg, Winterberg, Brankenstein etc.
- ❖ Others occupied hilly areas of Lesotho and Swaziland.
- ❖ With arrival of the power groups i.e the Bantu and the Europeans, the Khoikhoi were pushed into the Kalahari and Namib deserts.
- ❖ To day the Khoikhoi are living in dry areas of Angola, Botswana and Namibia
- ❖ A conclusion is required. E.g
- ❖ The origin of the Khoikhoi people is not very clear However they are believed to have originated from East and Central Africa. / any acceptable conclusion

Qn 2 b) Explain the factors that forced the Khoikhoi into south Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- The factors for their migration are not clearly known

BODY

- ❖ The need for fresh water and pasture for their animals.
- ❖ Internal conflicts over different issues such as land, cattle etc.
- ❖ The outbreak of drought and famine which resulted into food shortages.
- ❖ The outbreak of diseases such as sleeping sickness for human beings and Nagana for cattle.
- ❖ Presence of vast un occupied land in the interior which could be used for better settlement and pastoral activities.
- ❖ Over population in their home land which brought about land conflict.
- ❖ Love for adventure especially the youth who wanted to discover what was beyond their home land.
- ❖ The coming of the powerful communities e.g. the Bantu who raided them for food and cattle.
- ❖ The nomadic nature of the Khoikhoi which required them to move from one place to another.
- ❖ They also moved in search of wild games / animals since they were hunters.

Conclusion is required for example

The factors that forced the Khoikhoi to move from their home land into south Africa were both internal and external.

Qn 2 c) How did they live before the 18th century?

INTRODUCTION

- The Khoikhoi lived socially, economically and politically as below.

BODY

- ❖ Socially their language was full of clicks but with a wider vocabulary
- ❖ They lived in camps and family formed the basic unit of their social life.
- ❖ They carried out initiation ceremonies for all boys who wished to be called men
- ❖ After initiation ceremonies, boys were free to marry and it was done at an early age i.e a boy of 15 – 16 years married a girl of 11-13 years.
- ❖ After marriage the couples stayed with the in laws and hunted for them until the first born.
- ❖ Their marriage was polygamous and exogamous.
- ❖ They celebrated important stages of life e.g Birth, Puberty marriage e.t.c.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi believed in the existence of god called TWISGOAB the giver of rain and wealth.
- ❖ They very much respected the praying mantis as the symbol of wealth and fortune.
- ❖ They also believed in life after death.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi offered sacrifice to their gods in form of animals for rain and during war times.
- ❖ They danced for the appearance of the new and full moon.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi lived in beehive shaped huts
- ❖ They lived a nomadic life.
- ❖ They used traditional herbs to cure some diseases.
- ❖ Economically the Khoikhoi were great herders who kept fat tailed sheep, goats and cows.
- ❖ Cattle was highly regarded and served many functions such as bride wealth, food and sign of prestige.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi rarely killed / slaughtered their animals except on important occasions.
- ❖ Men among the Khoikhoi drank cow's milk while women and children drank ewe's milk.
- ❖ They were hunters who hunted small animals using poisonous arrows and bows
- ❖ While large animals like elephants, pits were dug to trap them.
- ❖ They gathered wild fruits, honey, locusts caterpillars etc. to enrich their diet.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi traded with their neighbors i.e. the Bantu and the Dutch especially barter system.
- ❖ They later adopted farming from the Bantu and grew crops like millet etc.
- ❖ They raided their neighbors for food and cattle.
- ❖ Land among the Khoikhoi was communally owned.
- ❖ There was division of labour i.e. men hunted and women gathered.
- ❖ They highly protected their hunting grounds
- ❖ They had no idea of iron work but they made tools out of stones and sticks.
- ❖ **Politically**, the Khoikhoi were more organized than the san i.e a village could have between 600- 2000 people
- ❖ Each camp /settlement was independent and their lived members related by blood or marriage.
- ❖ They were ruled by the chief who commanded great respect from his subjects.
- ❖ The chief had power and authority that's to say he could sentence the criminals to death if was a murder case.
- ❖ The chief however ruled according to the customs and traditions for the society.
- ❖ The chiefs settled internal conflicts in their camps with the help of the clan elders.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi had no standing army. However the youth were responsible for security.

- ❖ The Khoikhoi camps were not firmly united i.e they could easily break up in case of bigger problems for example famine.
- ❖ They were friendly to the foreigners but very hostile when attacked.
- ❖ Women among the Khoikhoi had no say in the politics.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The Khoikhoi were more organized than the san. However their camps were not firmly united since they could break up in case of bigger problems/ the Khoikhoi had a well-organized political, social and economic set up.

Qn 4 a) Show the similarities and differences between the san and the Khoikhoi.

INTRODUCTION

- The san were the first inhabitants of south Africa and the Khoikhoi were the second.
- The similarities and differences between the san and the Khoikhoi are got from their origin and organization.

BODY

- ❖ Both were the early inhabitants of south Africa.
- ❖ Both were short and brownish with clicks in their language
- ❖ They both originated from east and central Africa.
- ❖ They both belong to the Bush manoid family/ Khoisan family.
- ❖ They both carried out initiation ceremonies for all boys who wished to be called men.
- ❖ They both practiced early marriages that's to say the san girls of 7 -8 years married a boy f 14 -15 years and a Khoikhoi girl of 11 -13 years married a boy of 15 -16 years
- ❖ Both practiced polygamous marriage.
- ❖ Both after marriage, the couple lived at the bride family and hunt for them until the first born
- ❖ Both believed in life after death.
- ❖ Both carried out barter trade with their neighbors
- ❖ Both celebrated the appearance of the new and full moon.
- ❖ Both used traditional herbs to cure some diseases.
- ❖ Both fished in rivers of Vaal, Kei ,Tugela,orange etc. to supplement their diet.
- ❖ Both celebrated important stages of life such as birth, death puberty marriage. Etc.
- ❖ Both gathered wild fruits, honey, roots etc. as part of their food.
- ❖ Both used traditional weapons like spears, arrows and bows in their wars.
- ❖ Both never had a standing army but they depended on the youth for security.
- ❖ Both did not carry out crop farming not until the coming of the Bantu.
- ❖ Both gave much respect the praying mantis as a sign of wealth and fortune.
- ❖ Both used family as the basic social unit.
- ❖ In both women did not take part in the politics
- ❖ Both lived a nomadic life.
- ❖ Both were friendly to foreigners except when attacked.
- ❖ Both raided their neighbors for wealth.
- ❖ Both used poisonous arrows for hunting and defense.

However they had some differences which include;

- ❖ The san were the first to settle in south Africa while the Khoikhoi were the second.
- ❖ The san practiced endogamous marriage while the Khoikhoi practiced exogamous.
- ❖ The san lived in small groups of 25-70 people while the Khoikhoi lived in large groups of about 600 -2000 people.

- ❖ The san believed in Kaggen while the Khoikhoi believed in Twisgoab.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi kept cattle, goats and sheep while the san did not keep any domestic animal except the hunting dogs.
- ❖ The san were ruled by the elders while the Khoikhoi had the chiefs
- ❖ The Khoikhoi had a wider vocabulary than the san.
- ❖ The san were primary hunters while the Khoikhoi lived by herding.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi had better material culture than the san.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi married a bit later than the san. i.e a Khoikhoi girl married at the age of 11- 13 to a boy of 15 -16 years while a san girl married at the age of 7 -8 years to a boy of 14 – 15 years.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi were slightly taller than the san.

A conclusion is required e. g all in all the san and the Khoikhoi had a lot in common in both their origin and organization though there were some differences.

Qn. 4 b) How did the Khoikhoi relate with the Dutch?

INTRODUCTION

- The Dutch settlers had far reaching effects on the Khoikhoi.
- Initially the Khoikhoi developed a peaceful relationship with the Dutch settlers.

BODY

- ❖ The Khoikhoi exchanged meat, hides, cattle, sheep skins etc for the Dutch goods like alcohol, Tobacco, beads clothes etc.
- ❖ They adopted the Dutch language, religion, dressing and other social ways.
- ❖ However, the relationship soon changed due to Dutch greed for cattle and land.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi were enslaved on the Dutch established farms.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi lost their grazing land to the Dutch settlers.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi were sent to desert areas e. g the Nama moved to Namibia.
- ❖ They lost a lot of their cattle to the Dutch settlers leading to poverty.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi lost their political independence to the Dutch.
- ❖ The Dutch developed racial discrimination against the Khoikhoi.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi adopted the bad practices of the Dutch like smoking drinking alcohol etc.
- ❖ The Dutch hunted for the Khoikhoi like wild animals.
- ❖ The Dutch forced the Khoikhoi women into sex which lowered their status.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi were killed by the Dutch leading to depopulation.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi became totally dependent on the Dutch since they lost their land and cattle.
- ❖ They were attacked by the European diseases e.g. T.B which killed a number of them.

A conclusion is required e.g.

- Initially the Khoikhoi had a peaceful relationship with the Dutch settlers. However as time went it became bad.

Qn. 5 a) what were the origins of the Khoisan people?

INTRODUCTION

(a map is required)

- Khoisan is a collective word which means two groups of people i.e the Khoikhoi and the san.
- The Khoisan were the earliest inhabitants of south Africa.
- They were short with a yellowish or brownish skin with heavy clicks in their language.
- They were known by various names for example the san were called the TWA, ROA and BUSHMEN while the Khoikhoi were called herders and Hottentots by the Dutch.
- The Khoisan belong to the Bushmanoid / Khoisan family.

BODY

- ❖ Their origin is not very clear.
 - ❖ However they are believed to have come from East and central Africa.
 - ❖ This is based on the many art paintings they left in the caves of east and central Africa.
 - ❖ From east Africa, they took south ward route through central Africa into south Africa.
 - ❖ When they reached South Africa, they first settled in areas of Damaraland and Batlapin
 - ❖ Later they spread to areas of orange tree state Transvaal, Transkei Griqualand west, Cape, Natal etc.
 - ❖ Some went to hilly areas of Lesotho and Swaziland.
 - ❖ Others occupied mountainous areas of Drakensberg, Winterberg, Brankenstein, Camdeboo among others
 - ❖ Some of them settled along rivers of Orange, Vaal Kei, Tugela etc. due to the need for fishing
 - ❖ With the coming of the Bantu and the Dutch, The Khoisan were pushed into the Kalahari and Namib desert
 - ❖ Today the Khoisan live in dry areas of Angola Namibia and Botswana
 - ❖ For the Khoikhoi they entered south Africa in four groups that's to say the Nama, Gona, Cochaqua, and the Korana
 - ❖ The Nama moved West wards into fish river valley
 - ❖ The Cochaqua moved south wards and settled in the coastal areas of cape province
 - ❖ The Korana went to Griqualand west.
 - ❖ By the 15th century, the Portuguese found them around the bays of Table, Mossle, Saldanha, Vessel etc.
 - ❖ Their movement to east wards was checked by the Indian ocean and the Europeans
 - ❖ Some of the Khoikhoi were living between the Atlantic and Buffalo coasts.
- A conclusion** is required for example
The origin of the Khoisan is not very clear to historians. However they are believed to have come from East and Central Africa

Qn. 6 a) Why did the Bantu migrate from their homeland into south Africa

INTRODUCTION

- This a group of people with the root word "NTU"/ "NDU" referring to people.
- They are the largest group of people in South Africa and they make 70% of the total population of the country
- They originated from Katanga region of Congo and they entered South Africa in four groups that's to say The Shona, Sotho – Tswana, Nguni – Tsonga and the western Bantu (Ovambo Herero)
- They moved because of internal and external factors

BODY

- ❖ Population increase in their homeland which required more land for both settlement and agriculture
- ❖ The need for fertile to carry out agriculture since their previous land had lost fertility
- ❖ The need for fresh pasture and water for their animals
- ❖ Love for adventure especially the youth who wanted to discover what was beyond their homeland
- ❖ The outbreak of drought and famine which resulted into food and water shortages.
- ❖ Presence of internal conflicts among the various Bantu groups over land and cattle.

- ❖ External threats from the Luo who invaded them for food and cattle.
- ❖ The outbreak of diseases and epidemics for example sleeping sickness for human and Nagana for Cattle.
- ❖ The desire to keep export their iron making culture else where.
- ❖ The presence of vast un occupied land in south Africa which could be used for both settlement and agriculture.
- ❖ They had poor leadership/ oppressive leaders
- ❖ The need to trade with other people in iron tools and other items
- ❖ Group influence i.e some moved because their relatives and friends had moved.

A conclusion is required for example:

- They moved due to political, social and economic reasons
- They move due to population increase in their homeland which required more land for both settlement and Agriculture

Qn. 6 b) How did their settlement of the Bantu affect the Khoisan people?

INTRODUCTION.

The effects of the Bantu settlement on the Khoisan were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ There was population increase as a result of intermarriages with the Khoisan giving birth to new tribes e.g the Thembu.
- ❖ The Khoisan learnt iron smelting and dropped their weak weapons made out of stones and bones.
- ❖ They learnt curving and weaving from the Bantu.
- ❖ The Khoisan were introduced to new crops e.g yams, beans, millet etc.
- ❖ The Khoisan learnt the act of agriculture and began to live a permanent and settled life.
- ❖ The Khoisan started trading with the Bantu mainly Barter system.
- ❖ The Khoisan strengthened their political organization after coping the Bantu centralized administration.
- ❖ The Khoisan lost their independence to the Bantu
- ❖ The Khoisan lost their lives due to many wars for cattle and land.
- ❖ As a result of massive killings, there was depopulation.
- ❖ The Khoisan were displaced and pushed into dry areas of Namib and Kalahari deserts.
- ❖ The Khoisan lost their hunting grounds to the Bantu.
- ❖ The Khoisan were enslaved on the Bantu farms where the conditions were unfavorable e.g long working hours with little or no pay.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi lost their cattle to the Bantu leading to poverty.
- ❖ The Khoisan lost their culture and adopted the Bantu culture e.g dressing.
- ❖ The Khoisan suffered from misery, famine and poverty due to constant Bantu raids.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi lost their grazing land to the Bantu leading to land conflicts

A conclusion is required. E.g

- The Bantu invasion created insecurity which destroyed the political, social and economic life of the Khoisan.

Qn. 7. a) Describe the origin, movement and settlement of the Bantu people of south Africa.

- The Bantu are group of people with the root word "NTU /NDU referring to people.
- They were the third (3) group of the Africans to settle in south Africa.
- They make 70% of the total population of south Africa, they include the Nguni, Sotho Shona,

TswanaNgwane etc.

BODY

- ❖ Their origin is not very clear.
- ❖ However they are believed to have originated in the Benue – valley of Eastern Nigeria near Cameroon.
- ❖ Others say that the Bantu came from Katanga region of Congo.
- ❖ They moved into south Africa over 1000years age and by the 10th century, they were living in some parts of south Africa.
- ❖ They did not come as one group but different groups came i.e the Shona, the Sotho Tswana, the Nguni - Tsonga and Ambo Herero (western Bantu). And settled in different areas.
- ❖ **The Shonawere the first group**, they moved around the 19th century and settled in the Northern Rhodesia?(present day Zimbabwe).
- ❖ **The Sotho Tswana were the second group** to move and it had three subdivisions that's to say the Tswana, the southern Sotho and the Northern Sotho.
- ❖ The Tswana moved and settled in Botswana.
- ❖ The southern Sotho settled in Lesotho.
- ❖ The northern Sotho settled in central and northern Transvaal.
- ❖ Later they expanded as far as Orange and Vaal rivers and to the west of Kalahari desert.
- ❖ **The Nguni –Tsonga were their third group and the biggest.**
- ❖ These moved and settled in the East coastal areas of Zulu and Natal.
- ❖ By the 13th century, they had settled on the upper rivers of Umzimvubu and Tugela.
- ❖ They consist of the Zulu, Swazi, Ndebele, Pondo, Thembu etc.
- ❖ **The Ovambo Herero (Western Bantu) were the last group-** these moved and settled in Namibia.
- ❖ The rest moved and settled near Kalahari desert.
- ❖ Once in Namibia, they settled in Herero land.
- ❖ Some of them went into Angola where their agricultural life could do well.

A conclusion is required for example:

The origin of the Bantu people is not very clear to historians. However they are believed to have originated in the Benue - valley of eastern Nigeria near Cameroon or from Katanga region of Congo.

Qn.7 b) How were they organized by the early 19th century?

INTRODUCTION.

The Bantu were organized politically, economically and socially as below.

BODY

- ❖ **Politically**, the Bantu were centralized people with the king (chief) at the top.
- ❖ The chief was so powerful and he commanded respect from all people.
- ❖ However the chief ruled according to the customs and norms of the society.
- ❖ The chief employed permanent indunas to assist him in the governing of his people and they ruled with the agreement of the senior members of the clan.
- ❖ In matters of great importance, an assembly of all regional chiefs was called to solve the issue.
- ❖ The chief was the chief justice military and religious leader.
- ❖ The chiefs office was hereditary i.e from the father to the eldest son.
- ❖ Democracy existed in meetings where the chief could be criticized by his subjects.

- ❖ The chief usually appointed close relatives to important positions and council who acted as spies on his officials.
- ❖ Among the Sotho, the chiefdom was sub-divided into several provinces each under a sub chief which eased administration.
- ❖ Among the Nguni - Tsonga tribe was the basic unit of political life and it consisted of many people.
- ❖ Each tribe had its own territory and among the Nguni, the tribe was named after the clan founder.
- ❖ They had fewer succession wars since there was an established succession system.
- ❖ All adult males were regarded as chiefs' strength and the murder of one was highly punished.
- ❖ Chiefs among the Bantu were supposed to collect taxes, maintaining public works and justice in their society.
- ❖ **Socially**, the family was the most important unit of social and political organization.
- ❖ Marriage among the Bantu was a must and it was polygamous though monogamy existed.
- ❖ They worshiped a high God whom the Sotho called **MODIMO** the creator of the world.
- ❖ The Bantu had great beliefs in the spirits of their ancestors.
- ❖ The Nguni especially those around Fish river had a click sound adopted from the Khoikhoi .
- ❖ They carried out initiation ceremonies which distinguished men from boys and it was punctuated with circumcision.
- ❖ After initiation boys circumcised entered one regiment and it was named after the leading prince circumcised in that group.
- ❖ Initiation increased cultural unity and simplified work since age regiment did the work together.
- ❖ Female regiments also existed and they were led by chief's daughters.
- ❖ Among the Nguni two types of households existed i.e on the right and the left hand side.
- ❖ **Economically**, the Bantu grew crops like maize sorghum beans millet etc.
- ❖ They carried out pastoralism and they kept cattle, sheep goats etc.
- ❖ Cattle were very important for bride price, sacrifice and economic wealth.
- ❖ Traded with their neighbors especially the whites in Natal and Delgoabay and it was mainly barter system.
- ❖ They carried out fishing from the nearby rivers at Orange, Vaal to supplement their diet.
- ❖ They raided their neighbours for food and cattle e.g. the Khoikhoi.
- ❖ They gathered wild fruits, honey, roots etc. to enrich their diet.
- ❖ Among the Nguni, iron working was practiced and they made tools like arrows, bows spear etc. for hunting and security.
- ❖ They hunted wild animals for food, ivory and skins
- ❖ Land was a very important economic tool and it was owned communally.

A conclusion is needed e.g.

The Bantu had a well-established political, social and economic set up.

Qn. 8c) Describe the movement and settlement of the Sotho-Tswana

INTRODUCTION

- This was the second group of the Bantu people to enter south Africa.
- They are part of the southern Bantu / central wave.
- They share a lot in common with other Bantu like the word NTU.

BODY

- ❖ Their origin is not very clear to historians

- ❖ Perhaps they originated from KATANGA or western Sudan (Niger- Benue corridor)
- ❖ They entered southern Africa through great lakes region(lakes of Tanganyika and Malawi)
- ❖ The actual date when they started moving is not known but it ranges from the 13th and 16th centuries
- ❖ Following the Central route, they arrived in south Africa by 13th century
- ❖ They entered South Africa in 3 groups i.e. the Tswana, the Southern Sotho and the Northern Sotho
- ❖ The Tswana moved and settled in Botswana
- ❖ The southern Sotho who settled in Lesotho
- ❖ The Northern Sotho settled in Central and northern Transvaal.
- ❖ By the 14th century, they expanded as far as orange and Vaal rivers
- ❖ Their expansion westwards was hindered by the Kalahari Desert.
- ❖ The great Drakensberg also limited their East ward expansion
- ❖ Some of them moved south wards into the cape.
- ❖ By the 18th century their movement and settlement was ended.

A conclusion is required e.g.

- The origin of the Sotho- Tswana is not clearly known to historians. However they are believed to have originated from West African areas of Benue –Niger.

Qn. 8 d). Describe the movement and settlement of the NGUNI- TSONGA

INTRODUCTION

- They are part of the southern Bantu.
- They were the third group of the Bantu to enter south Africa
- They were hostile people

BODY

- ❖ Their origin is not very clear to the historians.
- ❖ However, they are believed to have came from west African areas of Benue valley of Eastern Nigeria near Cameroon.
- ❖ They moved to central Africa – Congo - Katanga region which became their area of dispersal.
- ❖ The actual date of their movement and settlement is not well known.
- ❖ However it is believed that they left Katanga about 2000years ago and moved in different groups and clans.
- ❖ They entered south Africa through the eastern route or south of lake Tanganyika and Malawi.
- ❖ They spread into Zulu land and Natal to the boarder of the Eastern cape.
- ❖ By the 13th century some of them had settled on the upper river of Umzimvubu.
- ❖ They later formed small tribes i.e. the Zulu, Swazi, Ndebele, Pondo, Xhosa etc.
- ❖ By the 16th century the Nguni had spread to Umtata.
- ❖ And by the early 19th century, they had reached river Fish.
- ❖ They also settled around rivers of Kei and Tugela.
- ❖ Some occupied the areas of Transkei, Cape colony and Transvaal.
- ❖ Others went and settled in Lesotho highlands.
- ❖ Their expansion to east wards was hindered by the presence of Drakensberg mountains
- ❖ However, the strong Swazi crossed them and moved north wards and settled in the Swazi mountains by the mid 19th century.

A conclusion is needed for example:

- The origin of the Nguni - Tsonga people is not very clear to the historians. However they are believed to have originated the areas of Benue valley of Eastern Nigeria near Cameroon.

Qn. 8e) How did the Khoisan relate with their neighbours

INTRODUCTION

- Khoisan is a combination of the san and the Khoikhoi and they were the earliest inhabitants of south
- The relationship between the Khoisan and their neighbors i.e. Bantu and the Dutch was either positive or negative.
- The Dutch settlement at the cape affected them and the effects determined the relationship.

BODY

- ❖ The Khoisan welcomed the Dutch and adopted their ways of life such as religion (Christianity dressing) etc.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi exchanged their cattle, meat, skins with the Dutch goods such as alcohol, tobacco etc.
- ❖ The Khoisan intermarried with the Bantu giving birth to new tribes like the Tembu.
- ❖ They learnt the art of iron smelting and dropped their weak weapons made out of stones and bones.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi learn the act of agriculture and began living in a more permanent and settled life.
- ❖ The Khoisan were introduced to new crops e.g. the Bantu introduced millet, yams beans etc.
- ❖ The Khoisan strengthened their political organization after coping the Bantu centralized system
- ❖ The Khoisan were enslaved on the Boer farms under poor working conditions e.g. long working hours, poor pay etc.
- ❖ With time they competed for hunting grounds and the Khoisan lost their hunting grounds to the Bantu.
- ❖ The Khoisan were attacked by the new European diseases like T.B.
- ❖ The Dutch had no respect to the Khoisan i.e. they hunted them like wild animals.
- ❖ The Khoisan lost much of their political powers to the Dutch and Bantu.
- ❖ The Bantu invasion created insecurity leading to destruction of their political economic and social life.
- ❖ The Khoisan were pushed in dry areas of Kalahari where they greatly suffered from famine.
- ❖ The Bantu and the Dutch raided the Khoikhoi for food and cattle leading to poverty
- ❖ They adopted the bad Dutch habits like smoking, drinking alcohol etc.
- ❖ The Dutch raped the Khoisan women which lowered their status.
- ❖ The Khoisan were killed by the Dutch using guns.

A conclusion is required e. g

The Khoisan relationship with their neighbors was either positive or negative

THE EUROPEAN INTEREST IN SOUTH AFRICA

Qn.9 a) Explain the reasons for the Dutch settlement at the cape colony

INTRODUCTION

- The Dutch were the Europeans who came from Netherlands and settled at the cape in the 17th century.

- They conducted their activities through chartered company i.e. D.El.CO (The Dutch East Indian Company)
- The Dutch never thought of finding a colony in S.A but a number of unplanned events made them to settle at the cape and these were both political, economic and social as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ The accidental breakdown at their ship **HEARLEM** at the cape in 1647 which led to the discovery of favorable facilities like fertile soils among others
 - ❖ The need to establish a calling station for a resting place for the Dutch sailors
 - ❖ The need to establish a workshop for repairing and refueling their ships on their way to far East.
 - ❖ The need to take control of the spicie trade with the west the East such as China and India.
 - ❖ The strategic location of the Cape that is to say it was a mid-way between Europe and Asia.
 - ❖ Some Dutch were running away from the European wars/ Napoleon wars
 - ❖ The cape had fertile soil which could support the growth of fruits and vegetables
 - ❖ The need to establish a medical center to treat the Dutch sailors from malaria, sleeping sickness which had claimed them.
 - ❖ The cape had good natural harbors for the Dutch ships to anchor and for protection.
 - ❖ The need to levy taxes from the incoming and outgoing ships.
 - ❖ The need to out compete the Portuguese the British and the French traders in the Far East
 - ❖ The courage of Jan Van Biebeck who led the first settlers in 1652.
 - ❖ The table bay had fresh waters which would serve a number of purpose to the Dutch sailors like drinking preparing meals among others
 - ❖ The cape would serve as part of the Dutch wider commercial empire.
 - ❖ They hoped to carry out trade with the Khoikhoi who had welcomed them.
 - ❖ Presence of vast unoccupied land at the cape which could be used for both settlement and agriculture
 - ❖ The nice climate of the cape for both settlement and Agriculture
- A conclusion** is required for example:
- The Dutch settlement at the cape colony was as a result of the accidental break down of their ship HEARLEM at the cape in 1614.

Qn. 9 b) What problems did they face at the cape?

INTRODUCTION.

- ❖ The Dutch faced both social, economical and political problems and these include:

BODY

- ❖ Home sickness since they were far away from their homeland.
- ❖ They never understand the geographical and the economical information of the cape that is why at first they failed in agriculture
- ❖ Majority of the settlers were ex – soldiers with little knowledge about agriculture hence a failure in agriculture.
- ❖ Some settlers were lazy and weak thus they could not do a lot for themselves
- ❖ Bad weather and harsh climatic conditions like heavy rainfall which destroyed their settlements.
- ❖ Flooded fields which brought poor yields hence famine.
- ❖ Some parts of the cape had infertile soils which made farming impossible yet they could not afford to buy fertilizers
- ❖ They had a problem of malaria and dysentery which claimed a number of them.
- ❖ Transport and communication was poor as well as storage facilities
- ❖ They lacked enough funds to facilitate their economic activities

- ❖ The company was poorly managed and some of officials were inefficient for example William Adrian was corrupt.
- ❖ They lacked women to marry hence homosexuality which discredited them in face of Africans
- ❖ Lack of enough Arable land leading to land conflicts between them and the Khoikhoi.
- ❖ The company restricted them from selling their products to other high paying Europeans yet the company was buying at lower prices
- ❖ The company did not allow them to grow profitable crops like Tobacco
- ❖ They lacked education facilities for their children.
- ❖ They faced the problem of isolation by the natives
- ❖ They were few in number to serve a wider area thus they had little impact at the cape
- ❖ Hostile tribes like the the Khoikhoi and the Bantu who caused insecurity.

A conclusion is required for example:

- The Dutch faced a series of both internal and external problems at the Cape.

Qn. 9 c) How did they solve the above problems?

INTRODUCTIONS

- Jan Van Riebeck tried to solve and improve the situation in a number of ways.

BODY

- ❖ Jan Van Riebeck expanded the settlement by bringing more land under the company
- ❖ He increased the number of workers to provide labour and they were mostly Africans
- ❖ Slaves were imported to meet the labour demand for example in 1657, 12 slaves from java and Madagascar were brought.
- ❖ Corrupt governors/ officials were dismissed for example Willem Van Der- Stel
- ❖ Temporary sick bays and later permanent hospitals were set up to cater for health of settlers.
- ❖ Farmers were allowed to sell their products to the visiting ships
- ❖ Settlers were allowed to raid and enslave the Africans to solve the problems of labour shortage.
- ❖ Large water reserves were built to solve the problems of water shortage during dry seasons.
- ❖ Permanent houses were set up in Stellenbosch, Graaf – Reinet to solve the problem of lack of accommodation.
- ❖ Elementary schools were built to teach the settlers children.
- ❖ Proper instructors were brought from Europe to teach new tactics in agriculture.
- ❖ They imported white orphan girls from Netherland and were even allowed to marry Africans to solve the problem of homosexuality
- ❖ A large defense castle was built to improve or boost security in the area
- ❖ Tax holidays were granted to settlers to attract more settlers in the colony to solve the problem of limited personal
- ❖ More men were recruited for defense to protect the settlers against Africans attacks
- ❖ Talented Khoikhoi linguists were brought to act as interpreters hence solving the problem of language barrier.
- ❖ Roads were also set up to ease the movement of the settlers.
- ❖ Loans were also given to farmers to enable them grow more crops.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. 9 d) How did the Dutch establish their colony in south Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- The Dutch were the European who came from Netherland and settled at the cape

- The Dutch never thought of finding a colony in south Africa but a series of un planned events made them to settle at the cape

BODY

- ❖ The Dutch settlement at the cape was as a result of the accidental break down of their ship Hearlem at the Cape in 1647.
- ❖ This led to the discovery of favorable facilities like good climate, fertile, soils among others which they reported to the D.E.I.CO on their return.
- ❖ Therefore this encouraged the Dutch government to establish a resting place.
- ❖ In 1652, Jan Van Riebeck arrived officially with 3 ships of the D.E.I.CO and set up a settlement along the Lies beck river.
- ❖ He put up a wooden fort as headquarter to act as a refreshing station.
- ❖ In 1657 the company sent 9 soldiers and allowed them to start colonizing and they took 13½ hactres of land.
- ❖ In 1668, another group of 200 French protestants known as HUEGNOTS arrived at the cape
- ❖ Later more Europeans from Germany came to strengthen the colony
- ❖ In 1685, the colony had 150 settlers families.
- ❖ And by 1700, it had 1300 colonialists
- ❖ Later the colony expanded east wards towards Fish river.
- ❖ By 1795, the colony had four districts that's to say
- ❖ The cape district based on cape town
- ❖ The swollen dam based on swollen dam
- ❖ The Graaf Reinet
- ❖ Stellen Bosch
- ❖ The settlers always occupied land where the conditions were favorable for farming and this land was taken by force.

A conclusion for example.

The Dutch establishment at the cape was as a result of the accidental break down of their ship Haarlem

Qn. 10 e) Explain the factors for the expansions of the Dutch up to Fish – river.

(MAP)

THE EARLY DUTCH EXPANSION UPTO THE FISH RIVER

INTRODUCTION

- The factors for the Dutch expansion were both political, economic, social and geographical as follows:

BODY

- ❖ Presence of vast un occupied land in the interior which could be used for both settlement and agriculture
- ❖ Presence of superior weapons like maxim guns which enabled them to drive away the Africans
- ❖ The need for more fertile land since some parts of the cape had lost fertility
- ❖ The need for better grazing areas to feed their animals

- ❖ Most of the Dutch farmers had become bankrupt thus they wanted to try their luck else where
 - ❖ The failure of the D.E.I.CO to protect the Dutch settlers against Africans attacks
 - ❖ Absence of natural barriers like steep slopes, valleys to prevent their expansion.
 - ❖ Population increase at the Cape due to increased influence of the Europeans which required immediate territorial expansion.
 - ❖ The need to be independent from any control even from fellow Dutch men
 - ❖ The failure of the company to limit farmers from moving away
 - ❖ The nomadic nature of the Dutch which required them to move place to place another looking for water and pasture for their animals.
 - ❖ Love for adventure especially the youth who wanted to discover the interior.
 - ❖ The harsh company policies that restricted their economic activities.
 - ❖ The company gave the farmers low prices for their goods and were not allowed to grow profitable crops such as Tobacco.
 - ❖ The company's unfair land policy that is to say harsh land tenure system which made the farmers relatives lose the land on the death of the family head.
 - ❖ The outbreak of diseases such as malaria, fever typhoid at the Cape made them to move to save their lives
 - ❖ Harsh and corrupt officials of the company for example Willen Der Stel was selfishness.
 - ❖ Among others
- A conclusion** is required for example
- The Dutch expansion was mainly due to presence of vast un occupied land in the interior and the company's harsh policies.

Qn. 9 f) What were the effects of the Dutch settlement on the Africans.

INTRODUCTION

- The effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ Africans lost their lives in wars they fought with the Dutch for example the battle of Wegkop leading to depopulation
- ❖ Africans lost their productive land to the Dutch
- ❖ Africans lost their independence and political structures like the council of elders, hereditary system.
- ❖ Africans lost their property for example Khoikhoi lost their cattle to Dutch.
- ❖ There was a lot of suffering and misery during the Dutch expansion.
- ❖ African women were raped by the Dutch which lowered their status.
- ❖ Africans women were enslaved on the Dutch established farms under poor working conditions such as long working hours.
- ❖ There was increased African Nationalism and the desire for freedom
- ❖ Africans were displaced and pushed in dry areas of Kalahari and Namib.
- ❖ Africans suffered from European diseases for Tuberculosis (T.B)
- ❖ Africans acquired bad European practices for example smoking, prostitution, homosexuality among others
- ❖ Africans become poorer and beggars' from the whites as their land and cattle were taken by the Dutch
- ❖ There was development of trade especially barter system where the Africans exchanged their cattle to the Dutch products like beads, clothes among others.

- ❖ Africans chiefs lost their respect and power to the Dutch.
- ❖ Africans were deculturalised that is to say many of them convert to Christianity
- ❖ Africans lost their dignity especially after the introduction of the apartheid.
- ❖ There was outbreak of famine as Africans lost their land to the Dutch.
- ❖ Many European goods were introduced to Africans for example beads among others.
- ❖ Africans were hunted down like animals by the Dutch.

A conclusion is required for example:

- The effects of the Dutch settlement on the Africans were more destructive.

Qn.9 j) Explain the achievements of the DEICO

INTRODUCTION

- This was the official company through which the Dutch carried out their activities in South Africa
- The DEICO registered a number of achievements for the Dutch settler and they were both political, social and economic in nature:

BODY

- ❖ The company established a calling center at Table bay and later turned it into a colony.
- ❖ The company secured land from the Africans for the settlers for both settlement and Agriculture
- ❖ It transformed the cape colony from a mere calling station to a modern town
- ❖ The company solved labour problem by importing slave labour from Java and by encouraging Africans to work for the Dutch.
- ❖ The company established schools in Stellen Bosch for the children of the Dutch settlers
- ❖ The company expanded the colony up to four districts that is to say Cape town district, Stellen bosch, Swellen dam and GraafReinet
- ❖ They built a big water reserve at the cape to solve the problem of water shortages during dry seasons.
- ❖ The company built health centers to treat the Dutch settlers from diseases like malaria, dysentery among others.
- ❖ They provided security to the settlers through forming units commanders
- ❖ The company guarded the cape coast line safely for over 100 years
- ❖ They managed to kill their number one enemies that's to say the Africans by using Alcohol and diseases.
- ❖ The company introduced Christianity at the cape
- ❖ The company encouraged the coming of more Europeans for example the French, British which solved the problem of limited of personal
- ❖ The company controlled the trade monopoly of the cape that's to say non of the European powers would threaten their trade monopoly
- ❖ The company imported orphanage girls from Holland and other countries to be wives of the settlers hence solving the problems of homosexuality
- ❖ They built a church and a residence for magistrate in Stellen Bosch district.
- ❖ The company encouraged its officials to give tax holidays on the 1st farmers at the cape hence encouraging more farmers leading to increased output.
- ❖ They imported experts in farming from French and taught the settlers new techniques which made the colony self-sufficient in food production
- ❖ The company trained interpreters to solve the problem of language barrier

- ❖ Accidentally, the company led to the spread of Islam when they imported Muslim slaves from Java

A conclusion is needed for example:

- In conclusion the company registered a number of achievements more importantly it established a calling center at Table bay and later turned it into a colony and guarded the cape coast line safely for over 100 years from other European competitors.

Qn. 9 h) Why did the Company administration fail?

INTRODUCTION

- At first, the company registered a number of achievements during the 17th century
- However at the end of the 18th century it began to collapse due to both internal and external factors.

BODY

- ❖ There was stiff competition and commercial rivalry from the French and British who also wanted to control the area.
- ❖ There were corrupt and inefficient officials like Simon Der Stel who misused the company's funds
- ❖ Some of the company officials were incompetent and lacked managerial skills to run the company for example Willem Der – Stel
- ❖ The company failed to protect the settlers leading to revolts in Great Beinet and Swellen dam which affected its activities.
- ❖ The company ignored the settlers and over taxed them hence stopping trading with it.
- ❖ Technological development in London which led to the making of faster ships which out competed the Dutch
- ❖ The company had acquired many colonies which were very expensive to maintain.
- ❖ The company Napoleon wars in Europe made the waters insecure and to be dominated by the British leaving out the Dutch.
- ❖ Increased attacks/wars from Africans which weakened the settlers.
- ❖ The company lacked enough man power to run its activities.
- ❖ The British produced new and fresher food stuffs for example wheat, wine, rice etc. which gradually out competed the Dutch profitable spice bread.
- ❖ The harsh company policies on the settlers for example not allowing the farmers to grow profitable cash crops like Tobacco, Restricting, them from acquiring land etc.
- ❖ The heavy debt burden of about 10 million pounds leading to bankruptcy of the company
- ❖ The transfer of the European financial/commercial center from Amsterdam to London hence reducing trade profits of the company
- ❖ The French invasion of Holland in 1793 also affected the company's activities
- ❖ The request King William of Holland in 1795 to the British to occupy the cape thus British could not miss this chance
- ❖ The company lacked enough capital to maintain the cape colony.

A conclusion is required for example:

In conclusion therefore the British occupation of the cape colony in 1795 marked the end of the company's rule.

Qn.10 a) Explain the the achievements and failures of the following pioneer Dutch settlers:

a) JAN VAN RIEBECK

INTRODUCTION.

- He was among the 1st settlers at the Cape and arrived in 1652.
- He was born in Cuhemborg on 21st/4/1619
- He commanded the cape from 1652 – 1662

BODY

- ❖ He led the first DEICO group of about 130 people who came in 3 ships
 - ❖ He built a calling center under the commands of the company at the Cape.
 - ❖ He built a hospital with 6 (six) sailors and soldiers to treat the settlers from diseases like malaria which was claiming their lives.
 - ❖ He imported slave labour from west Africa, java and Madagascar to provide labour on the Dutch established farms and other public works.
 - ❖ He encouraged more settlers to come in South Africa and by 1662 they were about 120 settlers hence solving the problem of limited personal
 - ❖ He improved on the security of settlers by building up a large castle for defence.
 - ❖ He convinced and encouraged the Khoikhoi to trade with the settlers leading to an increase in the settlers animals population
 - ❖ He encouraged the 20 years limit for all colonialist before returning to Europe
 - ❖ He encouraged the giving of tax holidays on the 1st farmers at the cape which encouraged more farmers leading to the increased output.
 - ❖ He also imported Merino sheep from Holland for trade and meat.
 - ❖ He helped in the increase of food production by giving free land to settlers and importing experts in Agriculture.
 - ❖ He built a water reservoir at the cape to solve the problem of water shortages during dry seasons
 - ❖ He brought more land under the company's control by grabbing it from the Africans.
 - ❖ He established vegetables gardens and animal farms for fresh meat.
 - ❖ He set free men from the company control and he gave them a round 13.5 acres of land in the Lies Beck valley
 - ❖ He recommended for the expansion of the settlement to bring more land under the company's control
 - ❖ He tried to create good relationship between the Dutch and Africans
 - ❖ He gave settlers land to boost agriculture and they were to sell to the company
 - ❖ **However Jan Van Riebeck** had some weaknesses and these include:
 - ❖ He is blamed for having kept low prices of Agricultural products
 - ❖ He forced farmers to pay 10% of their cattle to the company for pasture rights.
 - ❖ He also forced the colonialist to stay under the company control for over 20 years without returning to their homelands
 - ❖ He forced the colonialist to offer free military services to the company which greatly annoyed them
 - ❖ He encouraged the enslavement of the Africans on the settlers farms and other public works which worsened the relationship between the Dutch and Africans.
 - ❖ In 1662 he left the cape and went to join his family in Jakata and later died in 1677.
- A conclusion is required** for example: Juan Van Riebeck greatly achieved for the DEICO though he had some weakness but they cannot outweigh his achievements

Qn. 10 b) SIMON VAN DER STEL.

INTRODUCTION

- He was a son of Adrian Van Derstel and he was the 1st governor of the cape colony from 1691 – 1699
- He arrived at the cape in 1678.
- He was army commander of the cape from 1679 – 1699

BODY

- ❖ He transformed the cape from the status of a calling station to a colony
- ❖ He encouraged more immigrants to enter South Africa so as to increase on the number of settlers.
- ❖ He imported orphaned girls from Holland to be wives of settlers to solve the problem of homosexuality.
- ❖ He established a court to handle judicial affairs in Settlen Bosch district.
- ❖ He encouraged the DEICO officials to resign and become free settlers.
- ❖ He welcomed the 200 French Huguenots who gave advise to settler on the modern agriculture methods leading to increased output.
- ❖ He made the cape colony self-sufficient in food production hence reducing on food imports
- ❖ He expanded the boundaries of the cape colony to cape town and settlen Bosch.
- ❖ Due to his efforts, the cape population increased and a new district of Settlen – Bosch was created in 1688.
- ❖ He built a church and a residence for the magistrate in Stellen – Bosch district
- ❖ **However Simon Van Derstel** had some weaknesses which include;
- ❖ He encouraged his son William Van Derstel to be appointed governor from 1699 – 1707 who was very corrupt
- ❖ He restricted the settlers from selling their products to other high paying companies
- ❖ He encouraged the enslavement of the Africans on the settlers farms leading to conflicts between the Dutch and the Africans
- ❖ His administration was discriminative that's to say women were not allowed in administration
- ❖ His government was very corrupt especially in giving contracts
- ❖ He also forced the non Dutch to speak Dutch language.
- ❖ During his time, the company's restrictions on Tobacco, meat among others continued.
- ❖ He made no efforts when food prices fell which negatively affected the farmers.
- ❖ In 1699 he retired and was successe by his son William Adrian Van Derstel.

A conclusion is required for example:

- The regime of Simon Van Derstel achieved much for the Dutch settlers. However he had some weaknesses which discredited him in the face of Dutch settlers

Qn. 11. a) Explain the factors that led to the kaffir warduring the second half of the 18th century.

INTRODUCTION

- These were conflicts between the Xhosa (Bantu) and the Boers plus the British on the eastern Frontiers around the fish river.
- They were many and occurred at different times that's to say the 1st occurred around 1770s and the last around 1879.
- They were also known as wars of dispossession, Xhosa wars, Mlanjeni wars of 1854 etc. and Xhosa leaders were Rarabe, Tyali etc.

BODY

- ❖ The expansion of both the Xhosa and the Boers that's to say the Boer moved north wards and Xhosa south wards when they met they fought.
- ❖ Both had different attitude towards land ownership i.e the Boer regarded land as private property while the Xhosa regarded it as a communal property.
- ❖ Both wanted large pieces of land for both settlement and pastoral activities.
- ❖ The need to prevent raids and counter raids on each other
- ❖ The Boers continuous raping of African women which lowered their status
- ❖ The drought and famine that hit both hence raiding each other for food leading to conflicts.
- ❖ The Boers enslavement of the Xhosa on their farms under poor working conditions like long working hours.
- ❖ The Xhosa did not like the spreading of Christianity by the whites in their land.
- ❖ The white disrespected and abuse of African cultures and traditions that's to say they referred to everything African did as satanic and backwardness.
- ❖ The failure of the Boers to defend and make clear boundaries on their land which made Xhosa to claim for them
- ❖ The role played by African leaders like Naranguase, Mlanjeni etc who promised immunity against white bullets encouraged Africans to fight
- ❖ The Boer living in isolated areas giving the Xhosa chance to raid them
- ❖ The need to stop British imperialism the Xhosa who wanted to take over the whole of south Africa.
- ❖ The massive influence of the British especially from 1820 which worsened land shortages leading to conflicts
- ❖ Both fought over cattle ownership due to excessive raids
- ❖ Both wanted fertile land to carry out agriculture since their previous land had lost fertility.
- ❖ The need by the Xhosa to defend their traditional powers and independence.
- ❖ The long term enmity, mistrust and jealous between the Boer and Xhosa.
- ❖ The need by the Xhosa to get rid of the white devils or wizards from African land

A conclusion is required for example:

- The causes of the kaffir wars both social, political and economic / were both short and long term.

Qn. 11 b) how did these wars affect the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION.

The effects of the Kaffir wars were both positive and negative on the people of S.A.

BODY

- ❖ There was great loss of lives on both sides i.e over 20,000 people were killed.
- ❖ Depopulation occurred as a result of great loss of lives during the course of the wars.
- ❖ There was decline in Xhosa traditional ways of life especially those who interacted with the Boers.

- ❖ The Xhosa were totally defeated by the Boers as their weapon were very much inferior compared to those of the Dutch.
- ❖ There was increased enslavement of the Africans on the Boer farms since they were defeated and weakened.
- ❖ The Bantu economy was destroyed and they had to depend on the whites for survival.
- ❖ African lost confidence in their traditional beliefs and many converted to Christianity .
- ❖ Africans migrated away from their ancestral land to dry areas.
- ❖ The Bantu chiefs lost their authority since their promises did not work.
- ❖ African lost their independence
- ❖ There was great destruction of property e.g agricultural farms were bunt down.
- ❖ There was intermarriages between the Africans and the whites giving birth to coloureds.
- ❖ Africans who survived lived in constant fear due to the racist policies of the whites.
- ❖ The 1834 war led to the great trek of 1835.
- ❖ Africans lost most of their fertile land to the whites hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ Africans became poorer due to the loss of their cattle and land to the whites
- ❖ Farming and trade were put on a stand still during the course of the wars leading to famine and poverty.

A conclusion is required e.g

- The effects of the Kaffir wars were more destructive to the Xhosa. (Africans).

Qn. 12 a) why were the British interested at the cape?

INTRODUCTION.

- The British were the second Europeans to occupy South Africa.
- Their interest was shown twice i.e the first was in 1795 – 1802 and the second in 1806 – 1912.
- Their interest in south Africa had both political, social and economic reason as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ The fear that the European wars (Napoleonic wars) would spread to S. Africa and destroy their interests

- ❖ The desire to protect the sea route to India to preserve their commercial interests.
- ❖ The collapse of the D.E. ICO cleared the way for the British invasion.
- ❖ The strategic position of the cape i.e it was half way between India and Europe where Britain had commercial interests.
- ❖ The need to establish a military base to protect the sea route to India.
- ❖ The need to protect the English farmers at the cape.
- ❖ The desire to gain prestige from other powers since by then the strength of the power was determined by the number of colonies she possessed.
- ❖ The need for market for the British manufactured products / goods.
- ❖ The desire for raw – materials to feed their unsatisfiable industries at home.
- ❖ The need to obtain revenue in form of taxes from traders.
- ❖ The cape had good fertile soils to support crop growing for the British farmers.
- ❖ The cape had fresh waters which was good for different purposes e.g drinking, preparing meals e.t.c.
- ❖ To have control over the profitable trade items, spices, ivory opium etc.
- ❖ The cape also had good natural harbours for the British ships to anchor.
- ❖ The cape had favourable climate to the Mediterranean climate for both settlement and crop growing.
- ❖ The good relationship between Britain and the Dutch crown government.
- ❖ The defeat of France and the signing of the Vienna settlement of 1814 formally enabled Britain to consolidate her rule over the cape colony.

A conclusion is required e.g

- The British occupation of South Africa (cape colony was largely due to economic reasons

Qn. 12 b) Describe how the British occupied the cape.

INTRODUCTION.

- The British were the second Europeans to settle in South Africa
- Their settlement at the cape came twice i.e the first occupation was in 1795 – 1802 and the second in 1806 -1912.

BODY

- ❖ The British occupation / conquest of the cape was through force
- ❖ It was mainly due to French invasion of Holland in 1793.
- ❖ This invasion made Britain to fear that France would dominate the important sea route to India.
- ❖ The Dutch king William V who had that to England requested Britain to protect / safeguard her colonies including the cape.
- ❖ Therefore the British decided to organize an attack on the cape colony after the collapse of the D. E. I. C.
- ❖ By September 1795, the British had effectively occupied the cape colony.
- ❖ This marked the 1st British occupation of the cape and it reigned from 1795 – 1802.
- ❖ In 1802 march, France and Britain signed a peace treaty at Amiens that restored peace between the two countries.
- ❖ By the treaty terms, Britain was to withdraw from the cape and the French were to leave Holland.
- ❖ Thus in 1803 -1806, cape was under the Batavian rule.
- ❖ In around 1803, Europe again faced wars and this made France to occupy Holland with the help of the Batavian rulers.
- ❖ This threatened British's interests in S. Africa.
- ❖ Out of fear the British sent General Biard with a fleet of 61 ships.
- ❖ Using both land and sea attacks he attacked the Batavian government in 1806 and defeated them which marked the 2nd British occupation i.e the cape.
- ❖ After the signing of the Vienna settlement of 1814, cape was officially handed over to the British and the Dutch government was compensated with a grant of 2 million pounds

A conclusion is required e.g

- The British occupied the cape twice i.e between 1795 -1802 and 1806 and the conquest arose from the French invasion of Holland in 1793 which threatened the British interests.

Qn. 12 c) Describe the changes introduced by the British in the cape (South Africa) by 1835.

INTRODUCTION

- In 1806 the British under General Biard occupied the cape for the second time.

- After their occupation, they made a number of changes in the colony e.g in the economy, church, language, judiciary, press, law and government and in general welfare of the slaves s seen below.

BODY

CHANGES IN THE ECONOMY.

- ❖ A new paper based on the British pound replaced the Dutch rix dollar.
- ❖ The policy of giving loans to immigrants was stopped.
- ❖ Salaries of government workers were reduced.
- ❖ Government expenditure on public workers such as construction of roads, railways etc was reduced.
- ❖ Removed all trade restrictions hence freedom of trade in the colony.
- ❖ For one to own land in the colony was to have a land title.
- ❖ Farmers were given liberty to sell their agricultural products to any company.

CHANGES IN LANGUAGE.

- ❖ The British made the colony more English
- ❖ By 1822, English language gradually replaced the Dutch language.
- ❖ Later English became official language and it was spoken / used in all public places like schools, hospitals etc.
- ❖ English education system was introduced in the colony.
- ❖ English teachers were rewarded to encourage the spread of the language.
- ❖ Public schools were set up in Graaf Reinet, Stellen Bosch etc to teach the Africans.
- ❖ English language was also used in the printing of newspapers and magazines e.g the African zuid etc.

CHANGES IN THE CHURCH / RELIGION

- ❖ Freedom of worship was given to all religious groups.
- ❖ The Roman Catholic Church was allowed to operate freely.
- ❖ The salaries of the priests were to be paid by the British government.
- ❖ The government officials were stopped from attending church meetings (synod meetings)

- ❖ The influence of the Dutch reformed church was reduced i.e the Dutch reformed church was reduced i.e the Dutch reformed priests were no longer important in the colony.

CHANGES IN THE PRESS

- ❖ In 1828, freedom of the press was granted and all old restrictions were relaxed.
- ❖ By 1835, many newspapers came up in both English and Dutch languages e.g Zuid –Afrikaans, Grahamstown etc.
- ❖ In 1828, a law requiring newspapers to pay 300 pounds before printing was passed.
- ❖ But during the time of Charles Somerset, press was censored.

CHANGES IN LAW AND GOVERNMENT.

- ❖ The cape was ruled by a British governor answerable to the colonial secretary in London.
- ❖ The governor was advised by an advisory council comprising of the governor, the chief justice and the colonial secretary.
- ❖ Later, the legislative council replaced the advisory council with all powers to debate and pass laws.
- ❖ Municipal councils were setup to run municipalities
- ❖ A charter of justice was introduced and a supreme court was set up.
- ❖ Judges were to be appointed by the British and paid by the British government.
- ❖ Judges were to be independent and were to hold offices as long as they were morally upright.
- ❖ British colonial laws replace the Roman Dutch laws.
- ❖ Court sessions were made public and Trial by jury was established.
- ❖ Later, only professional judges and lawyers were allowed in courts of law.
- ❖ Black circuit courts were introduced to hear the complaints of the Africans.
- ❖ The 50th ordinance was also introduced which restored the civil rights of the Africans.

CHANGES IN THE GENERAL WELFARE OF THE SLAVES

- ❖ In 1816, all slaves in the colony had to be registered and all unregistered slaves were declared free men and women.
- ❖ Slave masters were discouraged from giving harsh punishments against slaves.
- ❖ Slaves were allowed to give evidence about their bad masters.

- ❖ They were also encouraged to take up paid employments whenever they wanted.
- ❖ The law that required Africans to move with pass books was abolished.
- ❖ All Christian slaves were allowed to attend Sunday services and Sundays were made resting days.
- ❖ Public schools were set up to educate the slaves.
- ❖ Equality before the law was granted by the charter of justices
- ❖ Slaves were given the right to choose their bosses.
- ❖ A slave protector was set up in every district of the colony.
- ❖ The slave working hours were reduced.
- ❖ The runaway slaves were accommodated by the government.
- ❖ In 1834, all slaves were set free.

A conclusion is required e.g

- The British reforms/ changes at the cape were very destructive on the Boers which later forced them to trek into the interior of South Africa.

Qn. 12 d) How did the above changes affect the position of the Africans (slaves)?

INTRODUCTION.

The British changes affected the Africans/ slaves positively as follows

BODY

- ❖ Africans gained more liberty and freedom since they were now treated as human beings
- ❖ Africans acquired back their land from the Boers.
- ❖ Africans gained paid employments e.g court interpreters and many left Boer farms.
- ❖ Africans acquired education especially from missionary schools
- ❖ Africans were given freedom of worship and they were allowed to attend Sunday services and Sundays were made resting days.
- ❖ African freedom of movement was restored due to the removal of pass books.
- ❖ Africans could now report their cruel Boer masters to courts of law.
- ❖ Africans were given back their civil rights by the 50th ordinance.

- ❖ Special schools were set up for the Africans to help them acquire knowledge.
- ❖ Africans were later set free in 1834 after the abolition of slavery.
- ❖ There was restoration of hope and dignity.
- ❖ Africans/ slaves were protected by a slave protector which was set up in every district.
- ❖ There was formation for the black circuit courts which were mainly to handle African affairs
- ❖ Africans were given security of their property.
- ❖ Africans were protected from the harsh Boer punishments since it was made illegal.
- ❖ However Africans were more hated by the Boers hence the great trek.
- ❖ Africans also lost some of their land to the British.
- ❖ African culture was also undermined by the whites especially those who came into close contact with them.

A conclusion is required e.g.

- Generally the British changes affected the Africans positively since they were given more liberty and freedom.

Qn. 12 c) What were the effects of above changes on the Boers / Dutch?

INTRODUCTION.

The Boers were negatively affected by the British changes in the following ways.

BODY

- ❖ The Boers lost their natural pride and social superiority.
- ❖ There was shortage of labour on the Boer farms due to abolition of slave labour.
- ❖ The Boer currency ie. the Dutch rix dollar lost value and it was replaced by the new English pound.
- ❖ The Boers lost control / over economic activities like trade thus economic power was shifted to the British .
- ❖ The Boer language (Dutch) lost value and it was replaced by English which was made the official language.
- ❖ The Boers lost their independence as powers shifted in favour of the British.
- ❖ There was increased enmity between the Boers and the British which later resulted into the 1st

Anglo Boer war.

- ❖ The Boers remained educationally backward because they did not want English.
- ❖ The Boers also lost their valuable property to the British e.g cattle.
- ❖ The Dutch Roman criminal laws were replaced with the English criminal laws
- ❖ There was also a decline in the influence of the Dutch reformed church.
- ❖ The Boers also trekked into the interior of South Africa where they hoped to be free from the British rule.
- ❖ There was Slatcher's nek incident in 1816 where about 4 Boers were hanged for failing to appear before the black circuit courts.
- ❖ The Boers lost revenue due to the loss of control over economic activities in south Africa like Trade.
- ❖ Boer nationalism also increased in the area due to the need to regain their independence.
- ❖ The Boers lost their land to the British due to the British new land laws i.e having a land title.

A conclusion is required e.g.

- The effects of the British changes on the Boers were more destructive thus forcing them to trek into the interior where they hoped to be free

Qn. 12 d) How did the Boers respond to the British reforms at the cape?

INTRODUCTION

The Boers were not at all happy about the British reforms at the cape since they were destructive to their way of life. They thus responded in the following ways

BODY

- ❖ They organized a number of rebellions against the British e.g. in Great Reint and Swellendam demanding for independence.
- ❖ They opposed the English legal system which granted equality to non-whites.
- ❖ The Boers disliked the taxes introduced by the British because the British could not give them service like security.
- ❖ They opposed the freedom of worship which was given to the Africans
- ❖ They opposed the use of English education system, they thus remained educationally backward.

- ❖ They opposed the use of English as an official language.
- ❖ They rejected the abolition of the Dutch Rix dollar at the expense of the English pound.
- ❖ The Boers opposed the policy of taking them to courts by their African slaves.
- ❖ They opposed the missionary act of equating them to Africans through the principle of equality and brotherhood.
- ❖ The Boers become suspicious of the British plans of importing Presbyterian ministers from Scotland to replace Dutch church ministers.
- ❖ They also opposed the new British land policy for example having land tittles, allowing Africans to own land among others.
- ❖ The Boers treated Africans more badly/harshly than before
- ❖ They also rejected the missionaries' protection of the runaway slaves.
- ❖ The Boers were not happy with the compensation which was given to them after the abolition of slavery in 1834.

A conclusion is required for example:

Finally, the dissatisfied Boers trekked into the interior where they hoped to be free from the British rule.

Qn. 13 a) Explain the achievements of the Governor Charles Somersets in the history of south Africa between 1814 – 1826.

INTRODUCTION

- He was the 2nd son of the 5th Duke of beautifont
- He was born in the 1767 and was the third governor of the British second government of the cape
- He was very human to African right.

BODY

- ❖ He gave Africans more freedom and liberty.
- ❖ In 1816, he ordered for the registration of all the slaves at the cape.
- ❖ All slaves who were not registered were declared free men and women due to his efforts.
- ❖ He also put up a protector of slaves in the every district to supervise the registration and

treatment of slaves.

- ❖ He reduced the working hours of Africans/slaves.
- ❖ He also provided freedom of worship for slaves and Sundays were made resting days.
- ❖ He set up schools to educate African children
- ❖ He gave back Africans some of their stolen land e.g. the Khoikhoi.
- ❖ Africans were given freedom to choose their Boer masters that's to say were allowed to work for paid jobs.
- ❖ He abolished the pass system hence restoring African freedom of movement.
- ❖ He forced the Boers to provide better conditions to Africans
- ❖ He encouraged the establishment of black circuit courts which restored Africans rights
- ❖ He fought for African dignity and integrity
- ❖ Due to his efforts, Africans become interpreters in courts and in courts and they could report their matters for ill treatment.
- ❖ He called for passing of the 50th ordinance which restored African civil rights and they were treated as equal to whites
- ❖ He empowered Africans to judge their own cases, freely and fairly.
- ❖ He gave the coloreds and the Khoikhoi right to buy and own land and property on the same basis as the whites.
- ❖ He was responsible for the slatcher's nek incident of 1816 where about 4 Boers were hanged for failing to appear before the black circuit courts.
- ❖ He favored the policy of making the cape English and as a result English was gradually replaced Dutch language and later it become the official language

A conclusion is required for example:

Finally Governor Charles Somerset did more than others to improve the life of the slaves in the cape colony .

Qn. 13 b) Why were the Black circuit courts formed ?

INTRODUCTION

- These were mobile African courts formed to deal with the Boers injustice towards

Africans

- They moved from village to village to listen, hear and answer African complaints against Boer masters
- They were controlled and supervised by christian missionaries in South Africa especially Dr.Van Derkemp.

BODY.

- ❖ The need to end slavery in South Africa
- ❖ To provide Justice to the voiceless Africans
- ❖ To promote equality before the law.
- ❖ To stop the racial tension between the Boers and the Africans.
- ❖ To fight for the freedom of movement of the Africans (slaves) by removing pass books
- ❖ To provide protection for the run away slaves
- ❖ To give slaves / Africans an opportunity to choose their masters.
- ❖ To end the Boer exploitation of the Africans that is to say to pay them good wages
- ❖ To fight for African dignity and and integrity
- ❖ To promote economic justice in south Africa.
- ❖ To provide slave children equal education opportunities with the whites.
- ❖ To fight for the slave job security
- ❖ The influence the French revolution of 1789 that spread the principle of equality beyond Europe.
- ❖ To restore some African land they had lost to the whites.

A conclusion is required for example:

In conclusion the black circuit courts were mainly formed to end / fight the Boers injustice towards Africans.

Qn. 14 a) what were the results of the these courts to the Blacks?

INTRODUCTION.

- The results of Black circuit courts were mainly positive to the Blacks / Africans as seen below

BODY

- ❖ Africans were given mor freedom and liberty
- ❖ Slavery was ended in South Africa.
- ❖ African freedom of movement was restored after the abolition of pass system
- ❖ Africans were made to work as interpreters in courts thus improving their standards of living.
- ❖ African children were given freedom of education
- ❖ They called for the registration of all slaves in the colony and those who were not registered were declared free men and women
- ❖ Africans were given freedom of worship and Sundays were made resting days.
- ❖ They fought for justice for all before the law.
- ❖ They called for the formation of the 50th ordinance which restored the African civil rights.
- ❖ They gave the Africans rights to take / blame their cruel Boer masters to the courts of laws and they were judged fairly.
- ❖ They also called for slave protector in every district.
- ❖ They helped the Africans to get paid jobs since there given job opportunities.
- ❖ **Among others**

A conclusion is required e.g.

Finally the results of the Black circuit courts were largely positive to the African since they granted them their lost freedom and liberty.

Qn. 15 a) Describe the reforms/achievements of the Batavian republic between 1803 - 1806

INTRODUCTION

- This was anew name that was adopted by the government of Holland after the change of the

government

- The Batavians were the Dutch who governed the cape after the 1st British occupation and they controlled the former territories of the DEICO.

BODY

- ❖ The new administration was headed by the governor general Jan William Jansen assisted by Jacob Demist Abraham.
- ❖ The governor had a lot of power, i.e he made laws, affected the appointments as well as dismissals.
- ❖ During this period senior posts were given to the Batavians and the English were retained in the civil services as subordinates
- ❖ The judicial system was reformed and the high court became independent.
- ❖ The local government was also reformed and districts were sub - divided each under special rulers and each district had a government responsibilities called land rest.
- ❖ The land lost settled minor cases and linked settlers and government.
- ❖ The Khoikhoi were given back some of their land.
- ❖ Slave labour was reduced and the whites were encouraged to work for themselves.
- ❖ Freedom of worship was extended to all regius group.
- ❖ Education which emphasis ed thoughts and discission was extended to people.
- ❖ Those who remained as salves were treated fairly by their masters.
- ❖ Trade restrictions were removed and farmers could now trade in all crops and areas.
- ❖ New agricultural projects were started and merino sheep were imported from Austria and spain

Counclussion to required Eg.

The Batavians made a number of political, social and economic reforms at the cape colony.

Qn. 15 b) Why did the Batavians lose control over the cape colony in 1806?

INTRODUCTION.

- In 1806, the British launched an invasion at the cape colony under general Biad with a fleet of 61 ships and this marked the end of the Batavian rule.

BODY

- ❖ They open support the Batavian gave to the French made them lose European allies who would have condemned the British attack.
- ❖ The collapse of the treaty of Amiens in 1806 gave the British no option but recapturing the cape.
- ❖ The British had a strong naval force which the Batavian could not match.
- ❖ The Batavians had become bankrupt to prevent the British since they could not afford the war necessities.
- ❖ The warm welcome the Batavians gave the French in Holland which threatened the British's interests in Europe and Asia
- ❖ The determination of the British to take over the cape colony.
- ❖ The British wanted to protect the English farmers at the cape.
- ❖ The British need to setup a defence post at the cape to challenge the enemy ships.
- ❖ The British need to widen the market for their manufactured products.
- ❖ The British wanted to set up a calling center at the cape.
- ❖ The British wanted to protect her commercial route/interest in far East and cape was the shortest route.
- ❖ The role of general board who attacked the Batavians with a fleet of 61 ships

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion, the Batavians lost over the Cape colony due to internal and external factors.

Qn. 16 a) Explain the causes of the great trek./ Afrikaner exodus

INTRODUCTION

- Great trek was the massive Boer movement from the cape into the interior of south Africa running away from an unfavorable rule of the British.
- It took place in the 1835 - 1852 and it started near Graaf Reinet district.
- The Trekkers moved in different groups under different key leaders i.e. Louis Trigard, Van Jan - Rensburg, Gerit Maritz, Pretorious, Chillers, Pieter Retief.
- The Trekkers were over 10,000 and used ox - wagons to carry all their movable property
- Its causes were both long term and short term.

BODY

- ❖ The nomadic nature of the Boers which required them to move from one place to another looking

for water and pasture for their animals

- ❖ The presence of unoccupied land in the interior which could be used for both settlement and agriculture.
- ❖ Love for adventure especially the youths who wanted to discover the interior.
- ❖ The Boers' desire for independence i.e. they never wanted to be under any rule.
- ❖ The Mfecane period which depopulated the interior creating vacant land.
- ❖ The racial prejudice of the Boers i.e. they believed that they were God-chosen race who never wanted to be mixed up with others.
- ❖ The introduction of Black circuit courts where the Boers were to be blamed by the Africans (slaves)
- ❖ The missionary preaching of universal brotherhood making them equal to Africans which was breaking their racial barriers
- ❖ The passing of 50th ordinance which abolished the old system and restored African civil rights e.g. religious freedom, freedom of movement among others.
- ❖ The rumours that the Boers were to marry Africans, leave their churches, lose all their land etc. made them move.
- ❖ The continuous raids of the Bantu on the Boer farms for food and cattle.
- ❖ The missionary act of giving education to Africans which made them uncontrolled.
- ❖ Some parts of the Cape had become infertile which could not support agriculture.
- ❖ The British land policies of taking over unused land, mapping and fencing land, issuing land titles among others.
- ❖ The British failure to provide enough security to the Boers from Africans especially in the eastern parts.
- ❖ The British policy of Anglicanising the Cape e.g. making English the official language, replacing the Dutch rix dollar with British pounds among others.
- ❖ The Boer hatred of the British liberal policies that were favoring the Africans e.g. allowing them to own land, take their cruel Boer masters to courts among others.
- ❖ The increased population at the Cape which brought about land conflicts.
- ❖ Emancipation of slaves that is to say putting Africans on the same footing with the Boers.
- ❖ The 1861 Slatkoff's Nek incident where about 4 Boers were hanged for failing to appear before the black circuit courts.

A conclusion is required e.g.

Although there are many causes of the Great Trek the British seem to have been the major cause.

Qn. 16 b) Describe the course of the Great trek between 1830 and 1842.

THE GREAT TREK ROUTES AND MOVEMENTS BETWEEN 1830 AND 1842.

(MAP)

INTRODUCTION

- It was the mass Boer movement into the interior of South Africa and it took place between 1830 - 1852 and it started near the district of Great Reinet.
- It was carried out in three groups and the leaders were Louis Trigard, Van Jan Rensburg, Portgieter, Handrick, Gerit Maritz, Piete Retief, Pretorious among others.
- They used ox - wagons to carry all their movable properties.

BODY

- ❖ The first group was led Louis Trigard and Van Jan Rensburg.
- ❖ They moved East and then north wards crossing Orange and Vaal rivers.
- ❖ This group was slow in its movements because they were not prepared for the problems of a long journey .
- ❖ They suffered with fever which claimed many of them, shortage of gun powder and consumer goods.
- ❖ They first settled at Zoutensberg where Africans killed most them.
- ❖ By the time the Portuguese rescued them only 27 out of 100 trekkers reached Maputo
- ❖ The second group was led by Portgieter, Celliers and Gerit Maritz later joined it
- ❖ They moved north east wards and crossed river Vaal and established at orange free state
- ❖ When they reached in Ndebele land, they were seriously hit by the Ndebele under Mzilikazi hence the battle of Vegkop in 1836.
- ❖ In this battle, the Boers completely defeated the Ndebele and ran into present day Zimbabwe the former northern Rhodesia.
- ❖ **The third group** was led by Piete Retief.
- ❖ And it was the largest group and it moved around 1837
- ❖ They reached Zulu land and asked King Dingane for land
- ❖ Dingane promised them land only after recovering the cattle taken by Sekonyera Tiokwa chief.
- ❖ After Piete Rietief getting back the cattle, Dingane killed him at the bear while celebrating the victory against Sekonyera.
- ❖ Pretorious, the new Boer leader organised a revenge battle in October, 1838 i.e the battle of Blood river which the Zulu lost.
- ❖ Dingane was forced to give up Natal and some territory across river Tugela to the Boers

- ❖ By 1843, the republic of Natal was established
- ❖ After 1843, the British annexed Natal
- ❖ Pretorius led the Boers out of Natal and reached Transvaal around 1852.

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion the Boer movement into the interior was a gradual process and they moved in 3 major groups under different leaders and settled in different areas.

Qn.16 c) what were the problems faced by the Trekkers?

INTRODUCTION.

- The Trekkers faced both, social economic, political and Geographical problems and these include:

BODY

- ❖ They faced a lot of resistance from the local people for example Ndebele and the Zulu leading to battles of Vegkop and Blood river
- ❖ They suffered from diseases especially malaria for human beings and Nagana for cattle.
- ❖ Geographical barriers like thick forests, high mountains, steep valleys among others made their movement difficult.
- ❖ Some trekkers were killed by the local people e.g Pieter Rietief by Dingane
- ❖ Shortage of consumer goods on the way especially the 1st group
- ❖ Transport and communication was difficult in the interior because roads and railways were not yet established.
- ❖ Lack of enough gun powder to fight against their enemies.
- ❖ They were not prepared for the journey especially the 1st group.
- ❖ They could not educate their children due to lack of educational facilities
- ❖ They also faced a problem of the British who went on following them.
- ❖ Constant attacks from the Africans and the British hence reducing their number.
- ❖ Wild animals like lions used to attack them which claimed a lot of their lives.
- ❖ Internal conflicts among themselves for example at one time Transvaal was divided into 5 separate units
- ❖ There was breakdown of their ox - wagons due to long distance.
- ❖ Unfavorable climatic conditions like heavy rains, drought and famine causing starvation.
- ❖ Lack of stable and powerful political leaders e.g after the death of Piet Retief, the Boers of Natal had a political vacuum.
- ❖ Destruction of property due to endless wars.

- ❖ They also lacked enough funds to buy the necessities of life.
- ❖ Language barrier due to many local languages.
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required e.g.

Although, the Boer Trekkers faced a number of problems, resistance from the local people and the British continuous following them seem to have been the main problem

Qn. 16 d) What were the effects of the Great Trek on the people of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION.

- The effects of the Great Trek were both positive and negative on the people of South Africa?

BODY

- ❖ Africans lost their land to the Boers e.g. The Zulu lost Natal.
- ❖ It led to many wars between Africans and the Boers for example the battle of Vegkop of 1836 and the battle of blood river
- ❖ There was loss of lives both of the Boers and Africans leading to depopulation in some areas of the interior.
- ❖ Africans lost their property to the Boers e.g. Digane was fined 17000 heads of cattle.
- ❖ The enslavement of Africans on their established farms increased.
- ❖ Africans technology began to disappear as western technology was shown to Africans
- ❖ Western culture was introduced hence deculturalisation of Africans in form of dressing and religion.
- ❖ Africans chiefs acquired guns from the trekkers for example Mosheshe, Mpande etc hence strengthening their empires.
- ❖ Europeans diseases like Tuberculosis were spread into the interior .
- ❖ Racial segregation of the Boers was extended in the interior thus Africans become the second class citizens
- ❖ Africans traditional chiefs lost their powers to the Boers
- ❖ Africans got divided and began conflicting with each other for example Mpande and Dingane.
- ❖ There was decline in agriculture during the course of the wars leading to famine among the Africans
- ❖ Africans were displaced and sent to reserves where land was unproductive hence living in miserable life.
- ❖ African language were put into writing
- ❖ Africans lost their independence to the whites.

- ❖ It led to creation of the Boer independent republic in the interior e.g Natal, Transvaal and Orange free state.
- ❖ It opened up the interior of South Africa for active European settlement.
- ❖ It led to discovery of minerals for example gold and diamond in the Boer republic of Transvaal.
- ❖ The Boer trekkers lost contact to the Boers at the cape hence isolated
- ❖ The Boers lost their land to British
- ❖ It led to the Boer - British wars in the future e.g. The 1st Anglo Boer war of 1880 - 1881, the Jameson raid of 1895 etc.
- ❖ It led to the British annexation of the Boer republic of the Natal in 1843, Orange free state.
- ❖ There was introduction of modern farming in the interior for example application of fertilizers and livestock farming
- ❖ There was increased British and Boer nationalism in the area. Etc

A conclusion is required e.g

The great trek was a land mark in the history of South Africa since it changed the lives of the Boers, the British and the Africans.

Qn. 17 a) Explain the causes of the battle fought between the Boers and the Africans in 1836.

INTRODUCTION

- ◆ This was the battle of Vegkop fought between the Boer Trekkers and the Ndebele people under Mzilikazi
- ◆ It was fought by the trekkers of the 2nd group under Portgieter Cillier, Gerit Maritz among others between Vaal and Orange rivers.

BODY

- ❖ The increasing number of the Boers into the interior which threatened the Africans hence the need to drive them away hence the war.
- ❖ The Ndebele wanted to preserve their independence which was threatened by the trekkers.
- ❖ The outbreak of the great trek which brought the Boers into the interior making it easier to fight with the Ndebele.
- ❖ Both the Ndebele and the Boers were fighting overland for both settlement and agriculture.
- ❖ Both the Boers and the Ndebele wanted to prevent raids and counter raids over cattle and food.
- ❖ The Boers wanted to revenge for the earlier death of their people during the course of their movement.
- ❖ The Boers' confidence with superior weapons which gave them courage to fight the Ndebele.
- ❖ The Ndebele actions of arresting and killing of missionaries who were operating in their area

made the Boers to fight them.

- ❖ The Ndebele need to get rid of the white - wizards from African land.
- ❖ The parading of the Boers at Vegkop, left the Ndebele with no option but to fight
- ❖ The support given to the Boer trekkers by the Barolong, chief Moroka gave them courage and determination to fight.
- ❖ The earlier victories of Mzilikazi gave him confidence to fight against the Boer trekkers.
- ❖ The long term enmity between between the Boers and the Africans since the Boer settlement at the cape made them to fight
- ❖ The warrior mentality of the Ndebele made them risk war against the Boers
- ❖ The able leadership of Mzilikazi also encouraged the Ndebele to fight
- ❖ The need by the Ndebele to preserve their African culture which was undermined by the Boers calling it satanic
- ❖ The Boer determination to create new homes in the interior which was not liked by the Ndebele made them fight.
- ❖ The Boer disrespect of African chiefs i.e treating them like common men also caused the war.
- ❖ The outbreak of famine and drought which increased raids on each other for food also caused the battle.
- ❖ Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The causes of the battle of Vegkop were both political, social and economic as discussed above.

Qn. 17b) What were the effects of this battle?

INTRODUCTION.

- ◆ The effects of the battle of Vegkop were both positive and negative

BODY

- ❖ There was loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation in the interior.
- ❖ There was great loss of property e.g the Ndebele lost over 10,000 cattle.
- ❖ Agriculture was put on stand still during the course of the war leading to famine especially among the Ndebele
- ❖ Trade was also put on stand still hence poverty.
- ❖ The Ndebele were displaced from their homes into the present day Zimbabwe
- ❖ The war created misery and suffering among the Ndebele due to the loss of their people and cattle
- ❖ There was increased activities of the christian missionaries in the interior of South Africa.

- ❖ The Boer trekkers recovered some their lost property e.g ox - wagons, cattle etc.
- ❖ It prepared the way for future fightings between the Africans and the Boers for example The battle of blood river of 1838.
- ❖ The war ended with the defeat of the Ndebele by the determined Boers.
- ❖ It laid to a foundation for the formation of the Boer republic of Orange free state.
- ❖ The Ndebele lost their independence to the Boers
- ❖ The Ndebele culture was undermined by the trekking Boers i.e. Some them adopted Christianity at the expanse of their African tradition
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required e.g

The effects of the battle of Vegkop were more destructive on the Ndebele people

Qn. 17 c) why the Ndebele were defeated by the Boer trekkers

INTRODUCTION

- ◆ The factors for the defeat the Ndebele were both political, economic and military as explained below.

BODY

- ❖ The strong Boer nationalism which brought them together to fight a common enemy
- ❖ The Boers had stable and outstanding leaders in the names of Portgieter Celliers among others.
- ❖ The Boer determination to create new homes in the interior of South Africa at all costs.
- ❖ The Boers had strong and superior weapon such as guns compared to the Ndebele inferior weapons like arrows, stones among others.
- ❖ The Ndebele had been weakened by natural calamities such as drought, famine, diseases like malaria sickness among others which made them unable to stage a meaningful resistance.
- ❖ The Boers had well organized camps above all ready to fight.
- ❖ The Ndebele had a weak economy thus they could not sustain/support a prolonged war against the Boer who were economically well off.
- ❖ Numerically the Boers were on advantage over the Ndebele i.e they weer over 2,000 trekkers leaving in large camps, this enabled them to defeat the Ndebele.
- ❖ The support given to the Boers by the Barolong chief Moroka which gave them courage and determination
- ❖ The disunity between the Ndebele and their neighbours thus they could not offer them support against their enemies hence their defeat
- ❖ Lack of strong nationalism among the Ndebele thus they could not come together to fight a

common enemy.

- ❖ The Boers had superior fighting tactics e.g the scorched earth policy which destroyed all the Ndebele property hence weakening them leading to their defeat
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required. E.g

- The Ndebele were largely defeated due to low levels of Nationalism and disunity between the Ndebele and their neighbors.

Qn. 18 a) Explain the causes of the battle of the blood river

Introduction

- ◆ It was fought between the Boer trekkers of the third group of Pietie Rietief and the Zulu people on 16/02/1838 around river Donga and Blood river.
- ◆ The Boers were led by Pretorius and the Zulu by Dingane

BODY

- ❖ The outbreak of Great trek which brought the Boers into the interior making it easier to fight the African (Zulu).
- ❖ The Boer determination to set up an independent republic in the interior (Natal) and never to go back at the Cape because of the British mistreatment
- ❖ The Zulu need to protect their independence which was threatened by the Boer trekkers.
- ❖ The long term enmity between the Africans (Zulu) and the whites (Boer)
- ❖ The Zulu determination to protect their land from the Boer trekkers since they wanted land for both settlement and agriculture.
- ❖ The Zulu (Dingane) wanted to get rid of the Whites whom they suspected to be wizards.
- ❖ The Zulu need to protect their cattle from being raided by the Boer trekkers.
- ❖ The need to control raids and counter raids on both sides for food and cattle
- ❖ The Boer need to revenge for the murder of their brother Pietie Retief by Dingane
- ❖ The Boer disrespect of the Zulu leaders i.e treating them as common men annoyed the Zulu hence the war.
- ❖ The earlier victory of the Zulu over the Boers gave them courage to fight e.g the murder of Pietie Retief at the beer party
- ❖ The appointment of Pretorius as a new Boer leader gave them hope and determination to fight
- ❖ The presence of fire arms among the Zulu and the Boers encouraged them to fight.
- ❖ The Zulu need to defend Africans culture which was undermined by the Boer referring it as satanic and barbaric

- ❖ The outbreak of natural calamities such as drought and famine which caused hunger leading to the war
- ❖ The hostile nature of the Zulu made them to risk against the Boers
- ❖ The increasing number of the Boer into the interior which brought about land struggles hence the war
- ❖ The able leadership of Dingane i.e he was able to mobilise the Zulu into the war.
- ❖ Existence of suspicion and mistrust between the two led to war especially after Jacob Msimbiti warning of Dingane never to trust the Boer trekkers

A conclusion is required e.g

Battle of the blood river was as a result of a combination of factors but the camping of Boer commandoes was a spark off of the war

Qn. 18 b) what were the effects of the battle?

INTRODUCTION

- ◆ Generally the effects of the battle of blood river were negative on the sides of the Zulu people as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ Dingane was defeated by the determined Boer trekkers and forced to surrender Natal.
- ❖ Dingane lost his power to his half brother Mpande who worked to satisfy the demands of the Boers
- ❖ Dingane escaped to Swaziland but he was later captured and killed never to cause problems to the Boer trekkers
- ❖ The Zulu lost their fertile land to the Boers hence weakening them economically
- ❖ Both the Zulu and the Boer lost their cattle leading to poverty especially among the Africans
- ❖ There was loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation in the interior
- ❖ There was destruction of property during the course of the war e.g agricultural farms were destroyed
- ❖ Trade was also put to a stand still hence poverty among Africans
- ❖ There was a lot of suffering and misery among the Zulu due to the loss their land and cattle.
- ❖ Africans/Zulu adopted the Boer culture i.e dressing, religion hence a decline in African culture
- ❖ The Zulu lost their independence to the Boer trekkers
- ❖ The Zulu were displaced from their original homeland to other place where the conditions were unfavorable
- ❖ It led to the rise of Pretorius who played a big role in the history South Africa.

- ❖ It marked the beginning of the active Boer interference in the politics of south Africa
- ❖ The Zulu royal family was divided hence civil anarchy.

A conclusion is required e.g

Finally the battle of Blood river negatively affected the Zulu since their kingdom was reduced to only the land between Pongola and Tugela rivers.

Qn. 19 a) Explain the origin of the Boer republic of Natal.

INTRODUCTION

- ◆ The republic of Natal was established by the Boer trekkers of the third group Piet Retief and later under Adries Pretorius in 1839

BODY

- ❖ In 1838, the Boers trekkers reached Zulu land and asked King Dingane for land.
- ❖ Dingane promised them land only after recovering the cattle stolen by Senkonyera the Thokwa chief.
- ❖ Piet Ritief tricked Sekonyera and brought back the Zulu stolen cattle.
- ❖ After Piet Retief getting back the cattle, Dingane killed him at the a beer party while celebrating the victory against Sekonyera.
- ❖ After the death of Retief , Pretorius become anew leader.
- ❖ Pretorius organized a revenge battle in 1838 i.e the battle of the Blood river.
- ❖ In this battle, the Zulu were defeated and Dingane was forced to give up Natal and some parts of territory across river Tugela to the Boers.
- ❖ Pretorius later armed Mpande, Dingane's brother to over through Dingane. He was over thrown, exiled and later killed by the Swazi.
- ❖ Mpande was then declared the new Zulu king by Pretorius.
- ❖ The Boer established a republic in the lands between Umzimuvubu and Tugela rivers , the Natal republic with African capital of **Pietmaritzburg**.
- ❖ The republic was under the leadership of Andries Pretorius assisted by 24 members of the Boers people concil (volksrand)
- ❖ The council acted as a parliament, judiciary and executive organ of the republic.
- ❖ By 1840's the natal republic started weakening and 1843, the British took it from the Boers.
- ❖ And in 1845, natal republic was incorporated/ added to the British cape colony thus marking the end of the Boer independence.

A conclusion is required. Eg in conclusion, the natal republic was founded by the Boer trekkers of the 3rd ground under the leadership of Retief and later Pretorius with its capital at Pietmaritzburg.

Qn. 20 a) Why did the British annex Natal in 1843?

INTRODUCTION

- Natal was founded by the Boer Trekkers of the third (3rd) group under the leadership of Piet Retief and later under Andries Pretorius.
- However the British under sir Hurrell Smith invaded it in 1843 and brought it under the British control.
- Reasons for its annexation were both political, strategic and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ Its annexation was the best way of dealing with the unrest on the Eastern frontiers of the cape.
- ❖ The British wanted to put back the Boers under their control i.e they never wanted them to be independent.
- ❖ The British feared that the Boers could co-operate with strong African leaders against them hence annexing it.
- ❖ The Boer continuous enslavement of the Africans also led to the annexation of Natal to resecure the Africans.
- ❖ The British wanted to use Natal as a center of extending their imperialism else where.
- ❖ The British claimed that the Boers were very weak and they needed protection from the hostile African communities e.g. The Zulu, Xhosa.
- ❖ The British claimed that Natal was too poor to support its own government hence its annexation.
- ❖ The British argued that the Boer peoples council (the Volksraad) was weak and unstable.
- ❖ The British also feared that the Boers would ally with a rival European powers against them hence the annexation of Natal.
- ❖ The prevailing rumours that Natal was full of minerals also led to British occupation of the area.
- ❖ The strategic location of Natal i.e it was a gate way to the British commercial empire of the far east.
- ❖ The British never wanted the Boers to control port Durban because it was a very important trade point.
- ❖ Natal had fertile soils which could support plantation farming.
- ❖ The Boers lacked strong, capable and experienced leadership especially after the death of Piet Retief thus unable to put up a strong resistance against the British.
- ❖ The favorable climate of Natal which was conducive for British settlers.
- ❖ The British need to check on ever increasing Boer nationalism in the area.
- ❖ The existing enmity between the British and Boers since the British settlement at the cape.
- ❖ The military superiority of the British also encouraged them to annex Natal because Boers could not match with it.

- ❖ The end of the peace agreement that had been signed earlier between Pretorius and Smith in 1842 also led to the British annexation of Natal.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion the British annexation of Natal was largely due to economic motives.

Qn. 20 b) What were the effects of the British annexation of Natal Republic on the people of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION.

- ❖ Generally the British annexation of Natal affected the Boers negatively as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ The Boers lost independence to the British
- ❖ Later, Natal republic was added to the British Cape Colony.
- ❖ It made many Boers to leave Natal including General Pretorius to other areas e.g. Transvaal and Orange Free State.
- ❖ The annexation led to the Boer loss of land hence their displacement.
- ❖ There was loss of property e.g. farms, cattle etc.
- ❖ It paved the way for the development of the area e.g. the British established sugarcane, coffee and cotton plantations.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the Boer and the British in South Africa.
- ❖ It led to the further trekking of the Boer because they never wanted to be under the British rule.
- ❖ Natal became a base for the British to spread their influence and rule in the interior.
- ❖ It increased racial discrimination of the Whites (Boers) in the interior of South Africa.
- ❖ It created insecurity characterized by fear, tension and mistrust.
- ❖ It led to clashes between the trekking Boer and the Africans.
- ❖ It made the British to give up further annexation because of the financial and administrative effects involved.
- ❖ It led to the loss of lives of the Africans and the Boers during the wars leading to depopulation and tension in the area.
- ❖ Africans also lost their land to the trekking Boers.
- ❖ It led to the signing of treaties of Sand River and Bloemfontein between the Boers and the British which the Boer republic of Orange Free State and Transvaal retained their independence.

A Conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion the British annexation of Natal worsened the relationship between the Boer and the British which later resulted into the Anglo - Boer wars.

Qn. 21 a) Describe the foundation of the Boer republic of Orange Free State.

INTRODUCTION

- It was founded by the Boer trekkers of the second group under Portgieter and it was formed after the battle of Vegkop of 1836.

BODY

- ❖ It was established between rivers of Vaal and Orange
- ❖ It was first named Orange river colony.
- ❖ The defeated Ndebele were chased beyond Limpopo river.
- ❖ After expelling Mzilikazi, they set up a capital called Winbergers in honor of their Victory
- ❖ Later those Winbergers declared themselves part of Natal to escape the Basuto control.
- ❖ After the British annexation of Natal in 1843, most of them moved again to the plains across Vaal river.
- ❖ Those who remained behind fall under the control of the Griqua and the Basuto under Mosheshe.
- ❖ More trekkers joined them after 1843 especially from Natal.
- ❖ In 1844, a constitution was drawn and the parliament was set up to govern the state.
- ❖ Portgieter become the commander of the state.
- ❖ However in 1848, the colony was annexed by the British under Governor Sir Harry Smith.
- ❖ In 1849, the boundary line was established separating the Boers from the Basuto to prevent the Boer - Basuto conflicts.
- ❖ Mosheshe of the Basuto continued attacking the British and the Boers in Orange river Colony and on many occasions defeated them
- ❖ Later the British came to believe that their continued control of the Boer was becoming expensive.
- ❖ Therefore both the British and the Boers were forced to re think and decide on the Orange free State and Sir George Clerk was appointed resolve the issue.
- ❖ In 1852, the Boers approached Sir George and requested for independence.
- ❖ In 1854, the Bloemfontain convention was signed and gave the Boers independence.
- ❖ After 1858 Orange river colony become Orange Free State with Josious Hoffman as the first president and later Jacob Boshoff.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. 21 b) Explain the reasons for the British occupation of the Orange Free State in 1848

Introduction

- Orange Free State was founded by the Boer trekkers of the second group after the battle of Vegkop of 1836 under the leadership of Portgieter, Maritz and Cellier and it was established

between rivers of Vaal and Orange.

- However in 1848, the British Governor Sir Harry Smith annexed it.

BODY.

- ❖ The British never wanted the Boers to live independent since they regarded them as their subjects.
- ❖ The British need to check /kill the ever growing Boer nationalism in the area which was a threat to their stay.
- ❖ The British wanted to control the whole of South Africa including the Boer controlled territories hence annexation of Orange Free State.
- ❖ The British need to discourage further Boer movement into the of South Africa.
- ❖ The British suspected minerals i.e gold and diamond in Orange Free State thus they wanted to exploit them.
- ❖ The exitance of the long term enmity between the Boers and the British since the British settlement at the cape in 1795
- ❖ The British need to stop the Boer enslavement of the Africans on their established farms and other public works like construction of roads among others.
- ❖ The desire to stop the endless war between the Africans and Boers from spreading to other areas e.g the Boers were conflicting with the Basuto over land.
- ❖ Orange Free state had fertile soils which could be used for plantation farming by the British
- ❖ Mosheshe's failure to agree with Adam kook the leader of Griqua on their boundaries with the Boers led to the annexation of Orange Free State.
- ❖ The British occupation of Natal in 1843 they thus used it as abase of extending their influence into Orange Free State
- ❖ The support from the Boers who had been weakened by the many Basuto attacks.
- ❖ The failure Napier to create lasting peace in the area made the British to occupy Orange Free State as away of creating peace.
- ❖ The desire to establish a strong, stable and effective government in the area by the British which the Boers had failed to put up.
- ❖ The role of the new British governor Sir Harry Smith who wanted to put Orange Free State under British control.
- ❖ The Boer population was scatered, they were divided up and more so they were weakened by constant conflicts with the Africans . Such weaknesses encouraged the British occupy Orange Free State.

A conclusion is required e.g

The reasons for the British occupation of the Orange Free state were both long term and short term as explained above.

Qn. 21c) What were the effects of the annexation?

INTRODUCTION

- The effects of the British annexation of Orange Free State were mainly negative especially on the Boers and the Africans as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ The Boers lost their independence to the British thus Orange Free State was made part of the British colony in 1848
- ❖ It increased enmity between the Boers and the British
- ❖ After the British occupation of the orange free State many Boers moved to other areas including General Pretorius e.g in Transvaal.
- ❖ The Boers lost some their land to the British settlers
- ❖ It created instability and insecurity in the interior of South Africa
- ❖ It led to the spread of the British influence into the interior
- ❖ It led to further conflicts between the Boers and the British e.g the first Anglo Boer war of 1880 - 1881, the Jameson raid of 1895 etc.
- ❖ Africans lost their property i.e cattle to both the Boers and the British
- ❖ It increased the Boer spirit for independence/nationalism.
- ❖ Africans economies were destroyed i.e farming and to a smaller extent trade hence poverty
- ❖ Many Africans were killed when they were trying to resist the whites overland and cattle.
- ❖ There was increasing suffering of the of the Africans due to loss of their land and cattle.
- ❖ It led to the signing of an agreement called Bloemfontein convention in 1854 between the Boers and the British which gave the Boers their independence hence orange river colony was renamed Orange Free State.
- ❖ The British policy of following up the Boers increased hence occupation of Transvaal in 1877
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required e.g

The British annexation of Orange Free State further worsened the Boer - British relationship.

Qn.22a) Describe the foundation of the Boer republic of Transvaal.

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ Transvaal was formed in the 1st half of the 19th century by the militant trekkers who always fought for leadership mainly Pretorius, Celliers and Maritz.
- ❖ It was first established near the banks of river Limpopo but later established across river Vaal.

- ❖ The first settlers under Rensburg and Trigardt were killed by the inhabitants of the Limpopo valley yet others died of malaria
- ❖ It was after the defeat of Ndebele that the Boers started crossing the Vaal.
- ❖ Celliers acquired more land from the Ndebele and chief Makwena to create a large state.
- ❖ The Boers continued fighting for leadership among Pretorius, Celliers and Maritz
- ❖ Celliers and Maritz put in place a constitution to govern the Boers. Later a parliamentary council was elected with judicial powers
- ❖ Four towns were built i.e Ohrigstad, Potchefstroom, Lydenburg and Schoemansdal.
- ❖ In 1851, the British officer Owen came to Transvaal to solve their administrative problems after the British annexation of Transvaal.
- ❖ An agreement called Sand River Convention was signed in 1852 which granted Transvaal republic the independence from the British
- ❖ Pretorius became the first president and later Paul Kruger

A conclusion is required .

Qn. 21 b) Why did the British annex Transvaal?

INTRODUCTION

- Transvaal was established by the militant Boer trekkers who always fought for mainly Pretorius, Celliers and Maritz
- It was first established near the banks of river Limpopo but later established across river Vaal.
- However in 1877 the British annexed it due to political, social and economic reasons

BODY

- ❖ The long term enmity between the Boers and the British since the British occupation of the Cape in 1795 led to the British occupation of Transvaal.
- ❖ The British need to kill the Boer growing nationalism in the area because they feared that one time the Boers would attack them.
- ❖ The British need for a federation of the white republic of South Africa led to the annexation of Transvaal.
- ❖ The Boer failure to have a stable government that could resist the annexation.
- ❖ The British need to stop the Boer mistreatment of the Uitlanders i.e they were denied citizenship and civil rights.
- ❖ British need to protect Boers against the Africans for example the Zulu who always threatened them
- ❖ The British also claimed that Transvaal treasury was bankrupt to finance the activities hence its annexation.

- ❖ British never wanted the Boers to live independent.
- ❖ The British wanted the to stop the Boers enslavement of the Africans on their established farms.
- ❖ The British wanted to use Transvaal as a base of extending their influence further in the interior of South Africa
- ❖ The discovery of minerals in Transvaal i.e gold and diamond which created tension and fear between the two because the British feared that Transvaal would become more powerful than the Cape hence the occupation.
- ❖ The military weakness of Transvaal also led to its annexation.
- ❖ To stop the Boers' feeling of racial superiority over Africans from spreading further in the interior.
- ❖ The unpopularity of Burghers, the Transvaal president of the time because of his poor financial policies and religious fanatic made the British to annex.
- ❖ The British knew that Boers were weakened by Africans wars e.g the Bependi wars, Basuto wars etc hence the annexation of Transvaal.

A conclusion is required e.g

The causes of the British occupation of Transvaal were both long and short term.

Qn. 21 c) What were the effects the annexation?

INTRODUCTION

- The effects of the British annexation of Transvaal were both positive and negative on both the Whites and Africans.

BODY

- ❖ The Boers lost their independence to the British.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the Boers and the British which later led to the outbreak of the Anglo - Boer wars of 1880 - 81, the Jameson raid of 1895 and the second Anglo Boer war of 1899 - 1902.
- ❖ It increased the Boer nationalism i.e they became more determined to fight for their existence
- ❖ The Boers were humiliated since the British ignored their people council.
- ❖ The British suspended the setting of people's council /Voksrand due to the fear that it would increase anti - British feelings through condemning their occupation.
- ❖ There was increased British imperialism since a large part of South Africa was under British control.
- ❖ It made the Boers to boycott the British goods and even the Boer farmers refused to pay taxes to the British authorities.
- ❖ President Burger lost to Paul Kruger who was very determined to uphold the Boer interests.
- ❖ It made the Boers of Transvaal to send a delegation to London led by Paul Kruger to demand for

their independence though the British refused.

- ❖ It also led to the failure of the federation plans of Carvanan since the Boers were not willing to join hands with British.
- ❖ It also laid a foundation for the federation of South Africa which was achieved in 1910.
- ❖ There was loss of lives of both the whites and the Africans during the struggle.
- ❖ Massive destruction of property such as homesteads, plantations etc. occurred during the struggle.
- ❖ Africans lost their productive land to the Boers e.g. the Pendi and Zulu land hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ It laid a foundation for the Boer - British interference in the internal politics of the Zulu kingdom which later led to its collapse
- ❖ It created disunity among the Africans since the British used the Swazi against the Pendi in 1879
- ❖ It made African traditional chiefs such as Cetewayo, Sekukuni among others to lose their powers to the British and Boers etc

A conclusion is required. In conclusion, the British annexation of Transvaal worsened the Anglo-Boer relations which later led to the Anglo-Boer wars of 1880-1881, 1895 and 1899-1902.

Qn. 22 a) Explain the causes of the Mfecane period between 1800-1840

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ Mfecane was used by the Zulu to mean the time of trouble characterized by massive suffering, misery, destruction of property, bloodshed etc among African societies.
- ❖ It was also a time of numerous wars, the period of constructing bigger empires and the collapse of the weaker ones.
- ❖ It came up during the 1st half of the 19th century and the key tribes involved in it included the Ndwandwe, the Zulu, the Sotho, the Ndwandwe, Mthetwa.
- ❖ It was started by Dingiswayo of Mthetwa and it was intensified by Shaka of the Zulu empire
- ❖ Its causes were both long term and short term as explained below

BODY

- ❖ Population increase especially in northern Zulu land which resulted into land shortages leading to conflicts
- ❖ The need to create large political units. People like Dingiswayo, Sobhuza, Shaka etc wanted to create large empires hence conquering the weaker neighboring societies.
- ❖ The role of Dingiswayo who gave Africans military skill after being exposed to the use of guns when he met the Europeans.

- ❖ The need by both Shaka and Dingiswayo to control trade at the Delgoa bay also caused trouble and suffering
- ❖ The exhaustion of land which required the need for fertile land hence disturbances and conflicts.
- ❖ The penetration of the Boers into the interior of South Africa who used force to take African land also caused the Mfecane.
- ❖ The rise of Shaka to power and his military reforms for example the cow - horn method, the use of Assegai (short stabbing spear).
- ❖ The death of Shaka's mother Nandi in 1827 After her death Shaka declared 40 days of mourning during which many activities were suspended for example cultivation, drinking milk, having sex etc and those who violated his laws were severely punished.
- ❖ Shaka's ruthless character i.e he was not mindful to human suffering. Therefore he always influenced his soldiers to attack the neighboring societies causing misery and suffering
- ❖ Shaka's miserable background also caused the Mfecane period i.e was born an unwanted child where his father Senzangakona disowned him therefore he struggled to prove that he was brave hence causing suffering to others.
- ❖ The need for cattle and cattle raiding among the Bantu also caused the Mfecane period
- ❖ Shaka's establishment of a strong army which he used to attack the neighbouring societies in need to create a strong large Zulu empire also caused the Mfecane period.
- ❖ Existence of civil wars among the various tribes and clans over different issues such as land, cattle etc also caused Mfecane period.
- ❖ The need for free land to carry out pastoral activities due to increase in the number of animals especially in the northern Natal leading to land conflicts.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion the rise of Shaka and his ruthless character caused the Mfecane period.

Qn. 22 b) What were the results of the Mfecane wars?

Introduction

- The Mfecane had a number of positive and negative effects in East, Central and South Africa as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ Many people were killed leading to depopulation especially in Natal.
- ❖ It led to massive destruction of property such as farms
- ❖ It led to the spread of Zulu military tactics e.g the cow- horn method, Assegai to other parts of Africa e.g in the East and central Africa
- ❖ It created political instabilities in the area due to frequent wars
- ❖ There was cultural transformation as a result of intermarriages between the captives and the

original Zulu.

- ❖ Agriculture was put on a stand still during the Mfecane leading to famine'
- ❖ It led to the rise of powerful admirable leaders e.g Shaka of Zulu, Mosheshe of Basuto nation, Mswati etc.
- ❖ It facilitated the great trek due to the presence of unoccupied land in the interior which was as a result of massive killings during the Mfecane.
- ❖ It led to the rise of strong defensive states e.g the Basuto nation, the Swazi state etc
- ❖ It also caused poverty especially among the Africans due to loss cattle
- ❖ It led to increased population in some areas due to the settlements of people who ran away from the Mfecane e.g Eastern cape ,Swaziland , Basuto land etc
- ❖ Slave raiding increased and many Africans were sold into slavery.
- ❖ It made Shaka to be the most feared and respected leader in the area
- ❖ It created war refugees and wanderers like the Fingos who acquired the name due to begging of food and other items
- ❖ It led to massive migrations eg the Ngoni under Zwangendaba and the Ndebele under Mzilikazi left south Africa to east and central Africa
- ❖ It led to disruption of long distance trade routes of the Swahili caravans between port Kilwa and lake Malawi were greatly disturbed by the Ngoni raids hence a decline of the long distance trade in East Africa
- ❖ It prepared African societies e.g the Zulu and the Xhosa with total resistance against the Boers and the British rule
- ❖ There was loss of land especially the weaker states to the stronger states like the Zulu
- ❖ There was a shift of power from mere chiefs who originally existed to real dictators basing on Shaka 's style of leadership
- ❖ It also disrupted trade which was taking place along Delgoa bay hence poverty
- ❖ Slave raiding increased and many Africans were sold into slavery

A conclusion is required e.g

Indeed the Mfecane period constituted a revolution and crisis as African was mainly political, social, and economic changes as result of this period.

Qn. 22 a) Describe the achievement of King Dingiswayo for the Mthetwa people.

Introduction.

- He was one of the greatest rulers in the region of before the rise of Shaka.
- He was a son of Jobe Mthetwa chief and grew up at his fathers' palace. Later he attempted to kill his father to take over leadership but he failed.

- After the failure to kill his father, he escaped to Hlubi where he spent most his youthful life.
- While there, he met a European man Robert Cowen who taught him to use a gun and a horse and skills of leadership.
- In 1797 he returned to Mthetwa and overthrew his brother Mawewe and declared himself the King of the Mthetwa nation.

BODY

- ❖ He created a strong army based on regiments to protect his people against Zuide of the Ndwade and it had about 500 warriors/soldiers.
- ❖ Each regiment was equipped with spears and heavy shields for protection and taught them to use a gun and fight on horses
- ❖ He made appointments and promotions in the army based on merit rather than one's family background for example the appointment of Shaka.
- ❖ He promoted unity among the Mthetwa people by marrying from different clans.
- ❖ He created friendship with conquered states by absorbing them into his army.
- ❖ He expanded the boundaries of his nation by about 200 miles via conquering the weaker neighboring states.
- ❖ He offered cattle and other forms of wealth to the conquered people and his enemies to increase their loyalty.
- ❖ He associated with the whites who were living around the Lagoa bay and carried out trade with them.
- ❖ He established a skin and hides industry which helped him in making European wanted goods.
- ❖ Through trade contacts with the Portuguese, he obtained manufactured goods and arms hence strengthening his army.
- ❖ He had a council of elders that advised him on important matters regarding the administration of Mthetwa nation.
- ❖ He enabled Shaka to acquire military skill which he eventually applied to the Zulu nation.
- ❖ He allowed the conquered chiefdoms to retain their chiefs (leaders) as long as they were loyal to him.
- ❖ He encouraged people from other areas to join the Mthetwa nation.
- ❖ He abolished initiation ceremonies and all the youths who were militarily ready were directly recruited into his regiments.
- ❖ He gave his regiments oxen captured during raids hence increasing their loyalty towards him
- ❖ He removed the practice of traditional leaders commanding armies and instead appointed able men only loyal to him to command the regiments.

A conclusion is required e.g

By the time Dingiswayo died in 1881, he had transformed the Mthetwa chiefdom into a large multi-chiefdom.

Qn. 23 b) What challenges did Digswayo face as the leader of the Mthetwa.

Introduction

- Dingiswayo faced many challenges some came from himself and others were external as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ Opposition from the royal family after the killing of his brother Mawewe the rightful successor of the throne
- ❖ He also lacked support from the royal family due to his rebellion character.
- ❖ He had a problem of the increased population especially from the Nguni who had left their homeland hence land conflicts
- ❖ He allowed the conquered people to retrain their chiefs hence weakening his political powers
- ❖ There was disunity among the Mthetwa people due to the differences in tribes and languages because his nation was Inhabited by different tribes.
- ❖ The small states began breaking away from the Mthetwa due to the much freedom hence weakening the nation.
- ❖ He failed to enforce discipline among his soldiers this was seen when Shaka refused to protect him against a number of raids..
- ❖ At first Dingswayo lacked a strong army to protect his nation
- ❖ His army used spear with long handles which could not be recovered after throwing them towards the enemy.
- ❖ His soldier also carried heavy/ big shields during the war hence making the mobility/ movement of his soldiers difficult.
- ❖ Zwide's frequent attacks on the Mthetwa hence loss of cattle, lives and destruction of agriculture
- ❖ He is blamed for having trained Shaka as a brave soldier who later turned against him .
- ❖ Conflicts within the army i.e between the youths and the old worriers over the methods of fighting e.g the youth wanted military evolution
- ❖ The Mthetwa economy was also destroyed by constant wars hence starvation
- ❖ His refusal to aid Sobhuza left him to face Zwide alone leading to his death.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion Dingiswayo of Mthetwa nation had both internal and external challenges as described above.

Qn. 24 a) Describe the organisation of the Zulu state in the second half of the 19th century.

Introduction.

- The Zulu state was born around 1818 and was the largest kingdom in the whole of South Africa.
- It came into existence as a result of a great leaders like Shaka
- The Zulu state was organized politically, socially, and economically as described below.

BODY

- ❖ **Politically** the Zulu kingdom was headed by a king who possessed all the political powers in his hands.
- ❖ In the administration of the state, the king was assisted by military indunas (military generals) who governed regiments.
- ❖ The Kingdom had traditional tribal councils which were consulted on important matters. However Shaka replaced them with military indunas.
- ❖ The kingdom was composed of conquered areas and they were the left to govern themselves but the youths were absorbed into the Zulu army.
- ❖ The kingdom had a very strong standing army with the king as the commander in chief.
- ❖ It was illegal and punishable for Zulu military indunas to hold meetings without the awareness of the King.
- ❖ The indunas were appointed from among the commoners but on merit (ability).
- ❖ The Zulu military system emphasized tough military training to prepare soldiers fit for the wars e.g walking on thorns, climbing high mountains etc.
- ❖ The Zulu kingdom had age regiments and these consisted of warriors of the same age bracket.
- ❖ The indunas were directly appointed by the king and he could dismiss them at his will. However they were to pay regular visits to his palace to test their royalty.
- ❖ The Zulu kingdom had military settlements which were used as institutions for a standing army and these included Bulawayo, Mbelembele, Isikieble, etc.
- ❖ The Zulu kingdom had military tactics like the cow horn formation of fighting, the use of Assegai (short stabbing spear) which helped them to defeat all their surrounding enemies
- ❖ During the time of Shaka, some traditional customs that negatively affected the army were abolished e.g circumcision of soldiers that made them sick and non beneficial to the state in case of attacks, wearing of wooden sandals that lowered their speed.
- ❖ The Zulu military system especially during the time of Shaka prohibited marriage among the army before the age of 40. The importance of this was that they had only one duty of defending the nation.
- ❖ Female relative of the king especially during the time of Shaka were used in the local administration as spies thus they would report any political danger to the king.
- ❖ The kingdom was divided into political units for easy and effective administration.

- ❖ The Zulu had the hereditary system of assendence to power i.e the oldest son was take owner of the throne after the death of the king
- ❖ In judicial matters the king's court was the final court of appeal where complex cases from chiefs were refered.
- ❖ **Socially**, the Zulu people were religious and they believed in African traditional religion and the existence of supreme God and the king was a religious leader who presided over religious ceremonies.
- ❖ Existence of cultural ceremonies e.g the first fruit ceremony which was presented over the king.
- ❖ They also encouraged intermarriages especially between the captives and the original Zulu as away of enforcing unity.
- ❖ The old and the disabled were put to death especially during the time of Shaka because they were useless to the state.
- ❖ Age regiments were the basis of socialization because once put together they would forget all their differences and focus on one duty of defending the state.
- ❖ **Economically**, the Zulu economy was highly centralized i.e the king was the source of all wealth to his subjects.
- ❖ They carried out constant raids for food, cattle and women and the booty materials were consolidated and shared between the regiments
- ❖ The Zulu people carried out iron works and made iron implements such as spear, arrows etc mainly for defence.
- ❖ The Zulu people carried out trade with their neighbours (Africans) and the European at port Natal and Delgoa bay and they got items like clothes guns etc
- ❖ They also carried out pastoralism and each regiment had an obligation of keeping as many animals as possible and cattle was used for bride price and source of food for the growing population
- ❖ Some agriculture was carried out in the Zulu kingdom and crops grown included maize, millet cassava among others.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The Zulu kingdom had a well organized political, social and economic system .

Qn 24 b) What led to the decline of the Zulu state by the 19th century?

INTRODUCTION

- The Zulu state which started its course of development around 1800 did not survive the 19th century colonialism which later contributed to its collapse in 1879 .
- Its decline was a gradual process.

- The Zulu state declined due to internal and external factors.

BODY

- ❖ The dictatorship of Shaka. As a militant he had no respect for human dignity e.g he gave several punishment to his subjects such as hanging, spearing squads etc which created opposition from his subjects leading to the decline of the Zulu state
- ❖ The Mfecane period also led to the decline of the Zulu state i.e it led loss of able commanders e.g Zwangandaba who led some Ngoni groups towards north wards and settled in East, Mzilikazi who led the Nguni people and founded the Ndebele kingdom in central Africa.
- ❖ The death of Shaka's mother Nandi in 1827, after the death of his mother, Shaka declared 40 days of mauning where people were not allowed to have sex, farming, take milk etc and thousands of people were killed for failure to mourn adequately.
- ❖ Un timely death of Shaka in 1828 i.e Shaka was murdered by his two brothers Dingane and Mulangane which grabbed the Kingdom its founder and a military geneous.
- ❖ The civil wars after the death of Shaka. The 1st was between Dingane and Mpande on who to succed Shaka, another conflict was between Cetewayo and Mbulaze etc such internal wars made the empire weak..
- ❖ Weakness of Shaka's successors . Apart from Cetewayo leaders who succeded Shaka were very weak to stear the Kingdom e.g Dingane lacked military campaigns and raids on which the empires economy and strength entirely depended.
- ❖ The influence of the christian missionaries who preached against the Zulu customs religion etc hence reducing people royalty towards their leaders and started acting against them.
- ❖ The discovery of minerals e.g diamonds in 1867 and gold in 1884 also created more trouble to the kingdom i.e it attracted more Europeans to exploit the mineral wealth, also the energetic youth who would have constituted a fighting force went into mines for jobs
- ❖ The Zulu state was hit by natural calamities such as locusts drought, floods from river Zambezi hence worsening the situation.
- ❖ Relaxity of the Zulu army, leaders who assumed power e.g Dingane forget that Zulu was a military state which was sustained and created by wars he thus abolished some of the activities left by Shaka e.g raids vigorous training, allowed the army to marry before 40 years etc hence weakening the army
- ❖ The collaboration of some Zulu leaders with the whites also weakened the kingdom e..g Dingane with the Boers hence loss of the Kingdom's fertile land to the Boers.
- ❖ The Zulu neighbors even started to copy Shaka's war tactics such as the cow horn formation, use of the assegai and used them against the Zulu.
- ❖ The poor relationship of the Zulu with their neighboring states due to Shaka's an expansionist policy e.g the Swazi allied with the British to defeat the Zulu
- ❖ The coming of the British in the kingdom and their determination to bring the whole SouthAfrica under their control.

- ❖ The Zulu kingdom had become too big to be effectively controlled especially after the death of Shaka.
- ❖ After the death of Shaka, conquered states started demanding their independence hence becoming rebellious e.g Qwabe
- ❖ The death of Cetewayo who was strong and fore sighted statesman who had the ambition of protecting the Zulu kingdom against its enemies.
- ❖ It was a period of scramble and partition of Africa thus the Zulu empire could not survive

A conclusion is needed e.g

The disintegration and the eventual collapse of both internal and external factors as discussed above

Qn. 25 a) Describe the reforms that were introduced by Shaka in the Zulu Kingdom.

Introduction

- Shaka was a son of Sezangakona and Nandi born around 1783 and he grew up with his mother because of the misunderstanding between the mother and the father
- He had a very miserable childhood but he grew up with determinant, courage and strong ambition.
- He started his career as a courageous soldier of Dingiswayo.
- As a leader he made a number of reforms cutting a cross all aspects of life i.e political, social and economic and these include:

BODY

- ❖ He encouraged an expansionist policy with the aim of creating a bigger Zulu state e.g He attacked the Zwide, Ngwane etc.
- ❖ He introduced the short stubbing spears (assegai) to fight against his enemies.
- ❖ He also introduced the cow horn method of fighting where an enemy was attacked in three different directions hence helping him to defeat all his surrounding enemies
- ❖ He abolished traditional leaders and replaced them with the military indunas which helped him in the administration of the empire
- ❖ He emphasized tough military training of his soldiers e.g waking on thorns, climbing high mountains etc to prepare them fit in case of need.
- ❖ He established permanent regiments which were to enable him have an outstanding army.
- ❖ He abolished some traditional ceremonies like circumcision of soldiers on the grounds that it made them sick in time of need.
- ❖ He created women regiments to provide labour in gardens in order to ensure constant food supply to feed the growing population of his kingdom.

- ❖ The military indunas were not to hold any meeting without the his awareness.
- ❖ During his time, marriage among soldiers was only after the age of 40 this was to keep them busy with state duties.
- ❖ Retired army/soldiers formed a reserve army based at Bulawayo, Mbelembele, etc.
- ❖ His female relatives were married by big officers to spy them.
- ❖ During his time boys were too carry shields and spears for the soldiers.
- ❖ He enforced Zulu language to all people in the kingdom.
- ❖ During his time, the old and disabled were put to death.
- ❖ He made himself the overall commender of the army for effective control and supervision.
- ❖ He gave war booty, virgin girls and cattle to successful warriors hence efficiency.
- ❖ The indunas were appointed by Shaka himself and merit and royal were the qualifications.
- ❖ Warriors were given a head ring on reaching maturity.
- ❖ He controlled all economic activities in the empire.
- ❖ He encouraged the idea of total i.e destroying everything that belonged to the enemy.
- ❖ He abolished the wearing of wooden sandals on the ground that they lowered the speed of the soldiers thus they fought bare footed.

A conclusion to required e.g

- Shaka made a number of reforms of political, military, and economic reforms with the aim of creating a strong Zulu empire in the whole of south Africa.

Qn. 25 b) What were the effects effects of these reforms on the Zulu neighbours.

Introduction.

- The reforms had both positive and negative results on the Zulu neighbors as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ There was great loss of lives during Shaka's wars of expansion leading to depopulation in some areas.
- ❖ There was massive destruction of property e.g plantations, houses etc.
- ❖ There was displacement of people e.g Mzulikazi who led a group of Nguni speaking people and founded the Ndebele kingdom, the Ngoni etc
- ❖ Some states lost their independence as a result of Shaka's wars e.g the Mthetwa nation, Ndwandwe, etc.
- ❖ Zulu ways of fighting were spread to other areas e.g the cow horn method of fighting, Assegai etc.
- ❖ There was wide spread of famine due to destruction of agricultural plantations.

- ❖ There was massive suffering and misery due to the loss of their relative, land and cattle.
- ❖ Zulu militarism increased in the region hence causing insecurity.
- ❖ A sense of unity was created among the neighbouring states as a way of maintaining their Independence.
- ❖ There was loss of land by neighbors hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ Trade was disrupted leading to poverty.
- ❖ Detribalisation and Deculturalisation occurred due to forced absorption of the Zulu culture and intermarriages between the captives and the original Zulu.
- ❖ There was breakdown of family ties as people were running away to save their lives.
- ❖ There was refugee problem and beggars e.g the Fingo and the Hlubi.
- ❖ There was rise of defensive states e.g Basuto and Swazi.
- ❖ There was rise of powerful and admirable leaders in South Africa and beyond e.g Sobhuza, Mirambo, Shaka etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion the results of Shaka's reforms were largely negative on the Zulu neighbors.

Qn. 26a) Describe the achievements of Cetewayo for the Zulu people.

Introduction.

- Cetewayo was a son of Mpande and a nephew to Shaka.
- He was brilliant and ambitious like his uncle Shaka and he became famous in 1856 after defeat of his brother Mbulanzi at the battle of Magongo.

BODY

- ❖ He re-organised the Zulu military that had declined during the time of Dingane.
- ❖ He revived the age regiments of Shaka and increased the spirit of nationalism.
- ❖ He a fair and just leader hence creating peace in the Kingdom.
- ❖ He preserved the independence of Zulu between 1872 - 1879.
- ❖ He encouraged trade with the Portuguese in Mozambique hence acquiring European goods like guns which helped him to defend his empire.
- ❖ Initially he avoided wars with the British and the Boers.
- ❖ He encouraged raids against the Zulu neighbors to keep his soldiers fit.
- ❖ He managed to defeat the British at the battle of Isandhlwana in 1879.
- ❖ He created diplomatic contacts with the Portuguese hence acquiring arms from them.

- ❖ However in 1879 the British defeated him at the battle of Ulundi and he was exiled in London in 1882.
- ❖ Later the British brought him back as a ruler but with limited powers.
- ❖ He revived the military tactics of cow horn formation, surprise attacks etc.
- ❖ He later sought refuge in a reserve where he died in 1884 and was succeeded by his son Dinizulu.

In conclusion, Cetewayo was a strong fore sighted states man who had the ambitions of protecting the Zulu kingdom against its enemies.

Qn. 26 b) What problems did he face during his rule?

Introduction.

- Cetewayo had both internal and external problems as seen below.

BODY.

- ❖ Succession wars/ disputes between him and his brother Mbulazi.
- ❖ The flooding of the Boers and their negative effects on the empire e.g they grabbed land and cattle from the Zulu hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ The increasing missionary influence in the Kingdom i.e they preached against the Zulu culture, religion and invited the British to interfere in the Zulu affairs.
- ❖ The increasing Zulu population yet there was shortage of land leading to land conflicts.
- ❖ The British forced him into a reserve where he died in a miserable life.
- ❖ He had a problem of attacks from the British especially at the battle of Isandlwana and Ulundi.
- ❖ He ruled at the wrong time i.e it was a period of scramble and partition of Africa, so South Africa could not spare.
- ❖ He had inferior weapons such as spears, arrows yet the enemies were equipped with guns.
- ❖ By the time he assumed the power, the Zulu army and regiments were no longer functioning therefore he had to re-organise them.
- ❖ He had a problem of the British officer Sir Bartle Frere who was very determined to destroy his state.
- ❖ He had a problem of the very restless youths who wanted to attack the whites who were attacking the Zulu land.
- ❖ He failed to contain the two youths who chased the adulterous women into the British territory and killed them there.
- ❖ There was poverty among the Zulu people due to destruction of agriculture and trade.
- ❖ There was serious drought and famine which caused starvation among Zulu.

A conclusion is required e.g. In conclusion, Cetewayo faced both political, social and economic problems

Qn. 27 a) Explain the achievement of Mosheshe between 1815 - 1870.

Introduction.

- He was born around 1786 to the Makoteli clan of the Kwenya.
- As a youth he showed qualities of leadership with intelligence.
- By 1815, he had started building the Basuto nation.

BODY.

- ❖ He laid the foundation for the establishment of the Basuto state.
- ❖ He defended his newly created state from hostile neighbors e.g Shaka of Zulu through his policy of non intervention
- ❖ He managed to rule his multi tribe state for over 40 years without any serious rebellion.
- ❖ He managed to create unity of all tribes through establishing one language, one culture of all.
- ❖ He was a great diplomate of the time i.e he befriended his enemies by giving the gifts in form of cattle and beautiful women to prevent wars.
- ❖ He promoted western education in his kingdom by inviting the christian missionaries to civilise his people.
- ❖ He established a council of elders (Pitso) that solved problems that affected his people .
- ❖ He built a strong standing army for his nation through age regiments system and equipped it with guns to defend his nation.
- ❖ He invited missionaries to act as his advisors in the administration. However they later contributed to the loss of his independence
- ❖ Through his peaceful policy he managed to keep law and order in his state.
- ❖ He prevented the Boers and the British from over running his nation.
- ❖ He promoted trade with the Europeans and the neighboring states hence acquiring items such as guns which he used to defend his state.
- ❖ He strengthened the economy of the Basuto through giving land and cattle to his people.
- ❖ He established the capital of his nation on hill tops for easy defence against his enemies.

A conclusion is required e.g

In general, Mosheshe was a nation builder and a great diplomat in his time.

Qn. 28 b) What problems did he face?

Introduction

- Mosheshe had both internal and external problems as discussed below.

BODY

- ❖ He was faced by the problem of refugees who always raided his people for cattle and food .
- ❖ He faced the problem of hostile neighbors e.g Tilokwa and Ndwandwe who used to attack his people.
- ❖ The problem of the Boer trekkers who raided his country for land and cattle.
- ❖ Initially he lacked a strong army that would defeat his enemies.
- ❖ He also face a problem of the British colonial agent George Court who always attacked him to take away his independence.
- ❖ His polygamous nature resulted into birth of many children who started fighting for power.
- ❖ He also faced a problem of missionaries who preached against the Sotho culture and they constantly demanded for land.
- ❖ The rugged nature of his country made movement and construction of settlements difficult.
- ❖ Refusal of some communities to adopt the Sotho culture and language which threatened his independence.
- ❖ There was high level illiteracy in his nation.
- ❖ Due to the heterogeneous nature of his state, there was delay in major political decisions.
- ❖ His economy was weakened by constant attacks.
- ❖ There was pressure on land due to increasing population.
- ❖ The conquered chiefs and people were demanding their freedom hence a threat to the country's independence.
- ❖ There were also conflicts over the throne especially by the old.
- ❖ He had inferior weapons compared to his enemies who had guns and horses e.g the Korona.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion, Mosheshe faced both political, social, economical and geographical problems as discussed above.

Qn. 28 c) What techniques were used by Mosheshe to build the Basuto nation.

Introduction.

- The Basuto nation, present day Lesotho was created by and administered by Mosheshe who ruled between 1815 - 1870.
- Mosheshe was born around 1786 to the Makoteli clan of Kwenya. As a youth he showed qualities of leadership with intelligence.
- By 1815, he had started building Basuto nation and he used a number of techniques/ methods as soon as below.

Below

- ❖ He united many groups that had been displaced by Mfecane crisis into one united nations.
- ❖ He was the head of nation with all powers in his hands.
- ❖ All the conquered states during his wars were put under his control.
- ❖ He controlled the judicial civil religious affairs.of his nations.
- ❖ He built his capital on hill tops which helped him to detect all enemies.
- ❖ He welcomed the Refugee in his nation and gave them land and cattle.
- ❖ He also gave gifts of young girls, cattle to powerful neighbor e.g Shaka and Mzilikazi
- ❖ He established headquarters in different parts of the nation each under one of his family member.
- ❖ He used his female relatives to spy on the communities that were proving hostility and unfriendly to him.
- ❖ In some areas where peace failed, he used force to defeat his enemies e.g against Mzulikaziof the Ndebele kingdom
- ❖ He encouraged trade with his neighbors and later the Europeans which enabled him to acquire guns for protection.
- ❖ He used peace, patience and understanding to maintain law and order.
- ❖ He maintained marriage alliances to strengthen the nation, he thus married from every clan and tribe hence unity.
- ❖ He established the Pitso (general assembly) that discussed important matters of the nation.
- ❖ He controlled land in his nation and always distributed it to people.
- ❖ He built a strong army through age regiments and equipped it with guns to defend his nation.
- ❖ He invited missionaries ta act as advisers in his administration
- ❖ He treated and the conquered people well but absorbed them into the Basuto culture.
- ❖ He controlled all the economic activities in the state e.g He had control over cattle and gave some to his people.
- ❖ He used diplomatic means and friendly relations with his neighbours for peace.

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion Mosheshe used both political, social, economic and diplomatic techniques to build the Basuto.

Qn. 29 a) Describe the organisation of Basuto in the 19th century.

Introduction.

- The Basuto nation, the present day Lesotho was a defensive state which was created and administered by Mosheshe who ruled it between 1815 - 1870
- And Mosheshe was born around 1786 to the Makoteli clan of the Kwena.
- The Basuto nation was organised politically, socially and economically as described below.

BODY

- ❖ **Politically**, the state was headed by the king, who had control over every thing in the society.
- ❖ Kingship among the Basuto was hereditary i.e from father to eldest son.
- ❖ The Basuto state had a loose confederation of semi- independent chiefdoms.
- ❖ The king and chiefs were provided by the central clan and the King was important in all aspects of life i.e military, judiciary, etc
- ❖ The king posted his family relatives to spy on the conquered chiefs.
- ❖ The major state problems/ issues were handed by Pisto (general assembly)
- ❖ The general assembly (pisto) checked the powers of the chiefs and prevented dictatorship.
- ❖ All male adults were free to attend the Pisto meetings.
- ❖ Political unity and spirit of nationalism were highly encouraged through the Pisto.
- ❖ In military terms, the Sotho did not have a standing army but in case of need, different age groups were quickly mobilized to defend the nation.
- ❖ The king used peace as a tool for easy administration e.g always sent gifts to powerful neighboring leaders e.g Shaka of the Zulu empire.
- ❖ **Economically** the Sotho carried out crop growing and grew crops like sorghum, beans, G - nuts, yams etc to feed the growing population of the nation.
- ❖ They also kept animals like cattle , sheep, goats etc for meat skins etc.
- ❖ Trade was carried out on a small scale where ostrich feathers, copper, etc were bartered for European goods such as guns, clothes etc.
- ❖ They also carried out iron - works and made iron implements like spears arrows etc mainly for defence.
- ❖ Land among the Sotho was communally owned. However its usage and distribution was controlled by the King.
- ❖ **Socially**, the family formed the basic social unit.
- ❖ The Sotho used marriage alliance to foster unity in the kingdom
- ❖ They also carried initiation ceremonies to manhood and these ceremonies were highly respected
- ❖ The Sotho had clans and each clan had a leader/ chief and they acted as unifying agents.

A conclusion is require e.g

The Basuto had a well organized political, social and economic setup.

Qn. 30 a) Descrsibe the relationship between Mosheshe and the Europeans.

Introduction.

- They were basically two European groups who were interested in the Basuto nation i.e the Boers and the British.
- The relationship between Mosheshe and the Europeans was both good and bad.

BODY

- ❖ Missionaries were the first Europeans that Mosheshe dealt with, he gave them land on which they built a mission station.
- ❖ When the Boers arrived in the state during the days of Mfecane, he also gave them some temporary land for settlement and grazing their animals.
- ❖ The Boers started undermining Mosheshe's authority and they considered land he gave to them as permanent.
- ❖ Because of the acts of the Boers Mosheshe sought for protection from the British at the cape.
- ❖ In 1843 the British signed a treaty with governor Napier which came to be known as the Napier treaty which was warning the Boers not to steal the Basuto land.
- ❖ In 1846, Mosheshe entered into another agreement with the British in order to reduce the Sotho - Boer conflicts.
- ❖ Surprisingly the British also got interested in Basuto land and in 1848 governor Harry smith occupied Orange Free State leading to an open conflict between the British and Mosheshe
- ❖ The British united with the Boers against Mosheshe and their joint force was defeated.
- ❖ The British retreated their troops as far as Bhoem fontein
- ❖ After the war, the British instructed Mosheshe to pay a fine of 10,000 heads of cattle in order to solve the conflicts.
- ❖ However Mosheshe only managed to pay 3500 cows but the British asked for more cattle but Mosheshe asked them for more time to pay.
- ❖ In 1852, Mosheshe had failed to pay the remaining causes and the British attacked Basuto land and captured many heads of cattle from the Sotho people.
- ❖ Mosheshe decided to write a letter to the British governor requesting him not to attack the Sotho land.
- ❖ The British withdrew their troops and Mosheshe's request was granted when Basuto land was declared a British protectorate.

Finally Mosheshe died a happy man in 1870 after defending his state from the native African societies and the Europeans attacks.

Qn. 30 b) What were the results of this contact?

Introduction.

- The results of Mosheshe's contact with the Europeans were both positive and negative as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ There was loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation.
- ❖ The economy declined due to destruction and massive raiding of cattle.
- ❖ It prepared a foundation of the Anglo Basuto war of 1880 -1881.
- ❖ There was great loss of cattle due to mass raiding and counter raiding.
- ❖ It led to the destruction of states like Bolong and Tlokwa by Mosheshe in 1853 due to their collaboration with against the whites against him.
- ❖ It made some Kings to loss their powers e.g King Senkonyera of Tlokwa empire was forced to have a refugee at the cape.
- ❖ It increased British influence in the interior politics claiming to create peace in the parts of Cape colony.
- ❖ It created disunity among the Africans due to some Africans collaboration with the whites e.g Tlokwa and Bolong against the Sotho.
- ❖ It made the British officials to loose their post e.g contact Cathcat replaced sir Harry Smith as Cape governor, Warden by Green as a resident officer in Bloem fontein.
- ❖ It also showed that the British were not true liberals since they allied with the Boers against the Africans.
- ❖ It led to the loss of Basuto and other Africans independence to the Whites.
- ❖ There was massive misery and suffering especially among the Africans due to loss of their land, cattle and relatives.
- ❖ Mosheshe created a strong army with guns and horses to deal with the white enemies.
- ❖ It increased Africans nationalism e.g the Basuto allied with Puthi to defend their independence.
- ❖ It also increased Boer nationalism in the area due to the need to defeat the Africans.
- ❖ It led to annexation of the Boer of Orange Free river by the British.
- ❖ It created divisions with in the Basuto royal family as some members allied with the whites against the Basuto e.g Poshali with Warden.

A conclusion is required e.g

The results of the contact between Mosheshe and the Europeans were largely negative on the side of the Basuto since. It created divisions within the royal family and the eventual loss of their

independence.

Qn. 31 a) Describe the origin of the Swazi nation.

- ❖ Swazi nation was a defensive state that came into existence during the Mfecane.
- ❖ The country now called Swaziland was originally inhabited by a group of the Abambo people.
- ❖ Swazi nation was originally formed by the Ngwane people.
- ❖ Swazi nation was formed by Sobhuza, when he led his people north wards into the present day Swaziland.
- ❖ Sobhuza led his people across river Pongolo into modern Swaziland after his defeat by the Zwide.
- ❖ He established some Nguni clans like the Nkosi
- ❖ Later, he was joined by other clans that were running away from the Zulu raids.
- ❖ He welcomed the refugees and gave them land and food.
- ❖ He left the conquered people to retain their chiefs hence unity and royalty.
- ❖ He organised his men into age regiments.
- ❖ He allowed the non Ngwane people to speak the Ngwane language hence unity in the nation.
- ❖ He used diplomacy and avoided wars with his neighbour.
- ❖ He achieved it through giving them cattle e.g Shaka and Zwide and creating marriage alliances he for example married Zwide's daughter and produced Mswati hence cementing relationship with the neighbors.

Finally by 1814, the Swazi nation was established under Sobhuza up to 1840.

Qn. 32 b) How was the nation organised by the late 19th century.

Introduction.

- The Swazi nation was a defensive nation that came into existence during the Mfecane crisis and it was established by Sobhuza of the Ngwane around 1814.
- The State was organised politically, socially, and economically as described below.

BODY.

- ❖ **Politically**, the Swazi nation had the king as the top political administrator.
- ❖ Leadership was hereditary i.e from the father to the oldest son e.g when Sobhuza died he was succeeded by his son Mswati.
- ❖ The state was divided into different political units/chiefdoms for easy administration and most of the chiefs were answerable to the king and he could appoint and dismiss them.

- ❖ Power was shared between the elders' assembly and the general assembly.
- ❖ The chiefs made up the elders' council and discussed nation issues and the general assembly was made up of all male adults and checked the King and the chiefs.
- ❖ The state had age regiments to protect it but on temporary basis especially during the time of Sobhuza.
- ❖ At first, the state had no standing army but the young men were recruited to serve in the king's palace.
- ❖ The queen mother was highly respected among the Swazi and she was an official head of state, could act as a regent in case a king dies.
- ❖ King Sobhuza tried to keep peace with the neighbors by use of marriage ties e.g he married Zwide's daughter.
- ❖ The queen mother's place was the capital of the kingdom.
- ❖ The kingdom had a palace in every important town of the kingdom.
- ❖ **Socially**, the Swazi believed in ancestral spirits
- ❖ Family among the Swazi was the basic unit.
- ❖ They were also tied together by clan and age - regiments.
- ❖ Marriage was very important and it was polygamous and polygamy promoted intertribal links.
- ❖ They spoke Swazi language hence cementing unity in the kingdom.
- ❖ **Economically**, agriculture was the main economic activity of the state and they grew crops like beans, yams and cassava.
- ❖ Pastoralism was also carried out and they kept animals like cattle, sheep etc.
- ❖ Iron working was also important and tools like spears, arrows were produced for local use and trade purposes.
- ❖ Trade was also carried out with the neighbours in items like spears, arrows etc
- ❖ They also raided their neighbours for food and cattle.
- ❖ They carried out fruit gathering and hunting to supplement their diet.
- ❖ Land among the Swazi was communally owned.
- ❖ All economic activities in the Swazi nation were controlled by the king..

A conclusion is required e.g

The Swazi nation had a well established political, socially, and economic set up. However the British annexed it in 1868.

Qn. 32 c) What were the techniques / used by Sobhuza to build the Swazi nation?

Introductionn.

- The Swazi nation was a defensive state that came into existence during the Mfecane crisis and it was established by Sobhuza of the Ngwane around 1814.

BODY.

- ❖ He treated the conquered people kindly as long as they were loyal to him hence joining him to build the nation.
- ❖ He allowed the conquered people to retain their chiefs hence increasing loyalty to him.
- ❖ He absorbed the conquered youths into the Swazi regiments and promotions were made on merit.
- ❖ He emphasized diplomacy and peace to solve the Swazi problems and he only used force when diplomacy had failed.
- ❖ He organised age regiments which helped him to conquer some Sotho tribes and to keep peace.
- ❖ He encouraged the non Ngwane to adopt the Ngwane culture and language hence promoting unity in the kingdom.
- ❖ He encouraged pastoralism and trade to strengthen his economy.
- ❖ He established a council of elders to discuss on the important issues concerning the state.
- ❖ He rewarded the his good military performing officers with animals and women in order to encourage them during the time of wars.
- ❖ He lived in mountain of Lebombo which gave his people enough security from their enemies
- ❖ He welcomed the refugees and gave them land and cattle.
- ❖ He avoided conflicts with the neighbouring societies and his enemies e.g Zwide and Shaka.
- ❖ He also gave Shaka gifts of animals and women to prevent conflicts with him.
- ❖ He used marriage alliances to build good relationship with people e.g he married Zwide's daughter and produced Mswati who succeeded him
- ❖ He divided the state into chiefdoms for effective administration and all chiefs were to respect the central authority.
- ❖ He used peace and unity in the Kingdom hence promoting stability in the kingdom.

In conclusion , Sobhuza mainly used diplomatic means to build the Swazi state and he could only turn to forceful means when there was no alternative.

Qn. 32 e) Why did the British annex Swaziland .

Introduction.

- Swaziland was was a free country up to 1868.
- However after the death of Mswati in 1868 the whites started involving in Swaziland politics and by 1910, Swaziland was a full British protectorate.

- The reasons for its annexation were both long term and short term as discussed below.

BODY

- ❖ Mswati had given the Boers an outlet to the coast which the British never wanted hence annexation of Swaziland.
- ❖ The Boers had been given trading and mining rights by Mbandzeni which the British never wanted hence annexation of the country.
- ❖ The defeat of the Boers in the Second Anglo - Boer war which made them weak to defend their territory.
- ❖ The British desire to protect the British missionaries who were operating in the country forced them to occupy it.
- ❖ The British thought that Swaziland had minerals like Transvaal and Orange free state hence their occupation.
- ❖ They opposed the German Transvaal railway and feared that the Germans and the Boers would take over the country if she did not.
- ❖ The failure of the Provisional government to carry out the administrative work after the Death of Mbandzeni also led to the British annexation of Swaziland.
- ❖ The need for prestige i.e they wanted to be recognised by the other powers.
- ❖ It was also a period of the scramble and partition of Africa. Therefore Swaziland had to fall under the British control.
- ❖ The British wanted to protect the Africans from the Boers who were grabbing their land.
- ❖ The British got concerned about the enmity between the Boers and the Swazi which would affect Cape security hence annexation of Swaziland.
- ❖ The British were threatened by the increasing number of the Boers in Swaziland hence annexation.
- ❖ The long term negotiations between the Boers and the British over Swaziland finally gave a way to British annexation of the country.
- ❖ The British were not happy with the Boers interference in Swazi politics especially the death of Mbandzeni.

A conclusion is required e.g. The British annexed Swaziland due to political, social and economic reasons. 6767

AFRICAN RESPONSE TO THE COLONIAL RULE.

Qn. 25 a) Explain the causes of the British - Zulu wars of 1879.

Introduction.

- These wars were fought between the British and the Zulu. The first war was the battle of Isandhlwana on 22/01/1879 followed by the battle of Ulundi on 4th July 1879.
- They were also called the Aglo - Zulu wars, the Zulu were led by the Cetewayo and the British were led by Sir Bartle Frere.
- Its causes were both long term and short term.

BODY

- ❖ The Zulu need to defend their independence against the British.
- ❖ Cetewayo's revival of the Zulu military e.g he made a very big recruitment of about 30,000 well armed and well disciplined which annoyed the British.
- ❖ Presence of uncompromising/war like leaders i.e Cetewayo and Bartle Frere who believed in fighting as the only way of solving their problems.
- ❖ The singing of anti European songs and poems by the Women and children in the Zulu kingdom annoyed the British hence the wars.
- ❖ The British disrespect of the Zulu culture i.e they referred to African culture as satanic and barbaric.
- ❖ The British disrespect and abuse of African leaders mainly Cetewayo and others by replacing them with common men annoyed the Zulu leading to the wars.
- ❖ The outbreak of serious drought and famine in the Zulu land which forced the Zulu to raid the British for food leading to the fighting.
- ❖ The rise of the British imperialism i.e wanting to control the whole of South Africa.
- ❖ The rumours that the British missionaries were killed in the Zulu land while others had been stopped to operate forced the British to fight the Zulu.
- ❖ The running away of the two Zulu adulterous women into the British controlled areas and their murder by the Zulu angered the British hence the fighting.
- ❖ The inspiration the Zulu got from the Ethiopian slogan i.e Ethiopia for the Ethiopians encouraged them to fight the British.
- ❖ The over taxation and harsh methods of taxation by the British e.g flogging in the public etc annoyed the Zulu hence the wars.
- ❖ Cetewayo wanted revenge on the defeat by the Boers at the battle of Blood river of 1838.
- ❖ The increasing number of the British settlers in the Zulu land which caused land problems also caused the war.
- ❖ The first defeat of the British at Isandhlwana by the Zulu made them to revenge for such a humiliating defeat hence the battle of **Ulundi**.
- ❖ The Zulu need to regain their land which had been grabbed by the British.
- ❖ The Whites had superior weapons such as guns which encouraged them to fight.

- ❖ The long standing enmity between the Zulu and the whites forced them to fight .
- ❖ The failure of peaceful negotiations (diplomacy) between the British (sir Bartle Fer) and the Africans (Cetewayo) and many issues forced them to fight.
- ❖ The British feared that the Zulu would attack Transvaal and Distablise them especially after its annexation in 1877.
- ❖ The need by the Zulu to get ride of the White devils in their land.

A conclusion is required e.g

Generally the causes of the Anglo - Zulu wars were both political, social and economic in nature.

Qn. 25 b) How did these wars affect the people of South Africa.

Introduction.

- The effects of these wars were both positive and negative on the people of south Africa as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ At first the Zulu defeat the British at the battle of Isandlwana but later the Zulu were totally defeated by the British at Ulundi.
- ❖ Cetewayo was exiled in London and returned in South Africa in 1882 and died in 1884 and he was replaced by the his son Dinzulu who worked in the interest of the British.
- ❖ There was great loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation in Zulu land.
- ❖ The Zulu lost their independence and become under the British control.
- ❖ There was serious destruction of property e.g settlements, crops and animals.
- ❖ The Zulu kingdom was divided into 13 chiefdoms each under a British officer hence weakening it.
- ❖ Most of the Zulu chief lost their political powers to common men.
- ❖ Many Zulu lost their land to British and were pushed into reserves hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ These wars ended the military glory of the Zulu empire they thus settled down and began farming.
- ❖ Agriculture was put on the a standstill leading to famine.
- ❖ Trade was also put on stand still leading to poverty especially among the Zulu.
- ❖ There was a lot of misery and suffering especially among the African due the death of their people and land.
- ❖ There was increased Africans nationalism leading to other wars like the Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- ❖ Many people were displaced from their homes and villages leading family breakdown.
- ❖ The first Zulu victory of Isandlwana encouraged the Boers of Transvaal to rebel against the British

in 1880.

- ❖ The Zulu were made to provide cheap labour on the White established farms, in factories and on public works such as road construction under poor working conditions e.g long working hours.
- ❖ There was insecurity, fear and tension in the area.
- ❖ There was creation of reserves for the Africans where they lived under unbearable conditions, like overcrowding disease starvation etc.
- ❖ The Zulu lost trust in their African leaders and Africans religion since they did not help them to defeat the British.
- ❖ The Zulu lost their cattle to the British hence weakening them economically etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

Generally the effects of the Anglo - Zulu wars were largely negative on Africans.

Qn. 25 c) Why the Africans (Zulu) were defeated in 1879?

Introduction.

- The reasons for the defeat of the Africans were both political, military and economic in nature as seen below.

BODY

- ❖ Africans had inferior weapons such as spears, stones, arrows etc compared to the British deadly maxim guns hence their defeat.
- ❖ The British were highly experienced in wars i.e they had fought many European wars.
- ❖ Disunity among the Africans basing on tribal lines, succession wars hence denying them a chance of coming together to fight a common enemy.
- ❖ Africans had a poor economy to sustain a prolonged war against the British who were economically well off.
- ❖ The natural calamities that attacked the Zulu e.g famine also made them weak hence their defeat.
- ❖ The British were so much determined to take up Zulu land at all cost.
- ❖ Many youths who would have formed a strong force against the British had fled to diamond mines for jobs hence their defeat.
- ❖ The whites by that time had the geographical knowledge about the Zulu land hence making it easier to win the Zulu.
- ❖ The role of the Christian missionaries who had softened the hearts of the Africans making them collaborators.
- ❖ The British were highly organized at the battle of Ulundi compared to the Zulu.
- ❖ Africans never planned the war well enough and got into it unprepared hence their defeat.
- ❖ The collaboration of the Zulu neighbors with the British due to the hatred which was created

by Shaka's wars.

- ❖ The application of the earth scotched policy by the whites which destroyed livestock, plantations, food store hence weakening the Zulu.
- ❖ The principal of cooperation among the Whites adopted during the Berlin conference also helped them to defeat the Zulu.
- ❖ The natural beliefs in traditions betrayed the Africans because the spirits never protected them from the British
- ❖ Low levels of Africans nationalism.
- ❖ Africans lacked constant supply of arms which made it difficult to win the war.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conclusion, Africans were defeated largely due to lack of unity and low levels of nationalism.

Qn. 26 a) What were the causes of the Anglo - Basuto conflicts of 1880 - 1880?

Introduction:

- It was fought between the Sotho and the British.
- It was also called the war of Guns because the Major issues was concerning guns, and Africans were led by Chief Moroosi, Lerothodi and the British by the cape governor springs.
- The war began in 1878 by chief Morosi but the Most popular one began in 1880.

BODY

- ❖ The Basuto need to defend their independence against the British.
- ❖ The able leadership of Morosi, Lerothodi etc i.e they organised the Sotho into the a war mood.
- ❖ The long term enmity between the Africans and the Whites.
- ❖ The prevention bill of 1878 which required the Basuto to surrender their guns yet they not willing to loose them hence the war.
- ❖ The Basuto need to protect their need to protect their land which was their economic tool.
- ❖ The heavy taxes of the British e.g the hut tax with the oppressive methods of collection like flogging in public annoyed the Basuto hence the war.
- ❖ The British disrespect of the Sotho chiefs and under-minding of their authority treating them like common men annoyed the Basuto hence the war.
- ❖ The activities of the christian missionaries who preached against African culture i.e they reffered to African culture as satanic and barbaric which annoyed the Basuto.
- ❖ The increased forced labour on the British established farms and other public works like construction of roads, railways etc also caused the war.

- ❖ The British mal - administration in the Basuto land e.g flogging the Basuto in public etc annoyed them hence the war.
- ❖ The increasing number of the British into the Basuto land which brought about land struggles annoyed the Basuto leading to the war.
- ❖ The death of Mosheshe, a man who knew how to deal with the whites peacefully also caused war.
- ❖ The arrest of Lenana, Morosi's son charged of stealing a horse and his sentence to four year imprisonment sparked off the war.
- ❖ Rise of the British imperialism i.e wanting to control the whole of South Africa also caused the war.
- ❖ The appointment of Mr Hamilton Hope, a white magistrate among the Phuthi started the enmity since it was a sign of British lack of respect to Morosi's traditional authority and powers.
- ❖ The refusal by the Basuto to hand over their guns as it was required by the prevention bill of 1878 caused the war.
- ❖ The killing of chief Moresi by the British for failure to accept surrender terms including life imprisonment of his son annoyed the Basuto hence the war.
- ❖ The British wanted to convince the Boers of Transvaal that the a federation under them was safe through disarming the Basuto.
- ❖ The earlier victories against the whites by the Basuto encouraged them to fight. Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

Finally the causes of the Anglo - Basuto conflicts were both long term and short term.

Q.n 26 b) What the results of this conflict?

Introduction.

- It had both positive and negative results.

BODY

- ❖ The Africans won the war i.e British were defeated.
- ❖ There was loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation in the area.
- ❖ There was massive destruction of property e.g homelands, farms etc.
- ❖ The war encouraged future African rebellions e.g the Bambata rebellion of 1906, the Shona Ndebele in 1896 etc.
- ❖ The British were taught a lesson that Africans could also fight and win the Whites.
- ❖ Agriculture was put to stand still during course of the war leading to famine.
- ❖ Trade and commerce was also put on a standstill hence poverty especially among the Africans.
- ❖ It created divisions with the Basuto royal family since some supported the British and others opposed them.

- ❖ The Basuto were greatly weakened by the war since it was very expensive to win it.
- ❖ The Basuto were displaced and sent to work on the British established farms e.g the Phuthi.
- ❖ The Basuto were to retain their guns only after registering them.
- ❖ The British took full protection over Basuto land in 1884.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the whites and Africans.
- ❖ There was increased white settlers in Basuto land
- ❖ It also led to the loss of African independence to the British.
- ❖ The Basuto land survived from being taken over by the Boers. Etc

A conclusion is required e.g

Generally the effects of the Anglo - Basuto were more negative on the on side of the Africans.

Qn. 26 c) Why were the Basuto able to defeat the British at first?

Introduction.

- The reasons that enabled the Basuto to defeat the British were political, military and Geographical as explained below.

BODY

- ❖ The able leadership of Morosi of the Phuthi i.e he was able to mobilise his people into a war mood and put a strong resistance against the British.
- ❖ The high level of Basuto nationalism and unity built by Mosheshe was still strong hence a factor for the defeat of the British
- ❖ The determination of the Basuto to protect their independence against the foreigners.
- ❖ The British killing of chief Morosi and his son rather increased the Basuto determination to fight the British
- ❖ The role of Lerothodi i.e he led the Basuto during the second phase of the war.
- ❖ The British had under estimated the military strength of the Basuto hence their defeat.
- ❖ During that time the British were fighting many wars e.g the Pedi resistance, the Anglo - Boer war of 1880 -81 which exhausted them in terms of money and other resources hence their defeat
- ❖ The early Basuto trade contacts with the whites enabled them to get guns and horses which strengthened their camp.
- ❖ The Basuto had a common culture and language hence unity against a common enemy
- ❖ The Basuto avoided direct attacks against the British forces and instead used the guerrilla war tactics which enabled them to defeat the British.
- ❖ The Basutos' early contact with the white missionaries gave them experience of handling European affairs and also taught them how to use the guns and horses.

- ❖ The withdraw of the British forces in 1881 also explains their defeat.
- ❖ The Basuto were assured of constant food supply hence encouraging their fighters to fight up to the last man.
- ❖ The Basuto had also acquired a number of guns during the mineral revolution which gave them strength to fight the British
- ❖ The Basuto establishment of their capital on hill tops which helped them to detect their enemies.

A conclusion is required e.g

The Basuto defeat of the British was as a result of the able leadership of Morosi building of their capital on the hill tops, high level of nationalism among others.

Qn. 26 d) Why were the Basuto defeated in 1880 - 1881?

Introduction.

- The Basuto were defeated due to internal and external factors.

BODY

- ❖ Absence of strong leadership after the death of chief Morosi the Phuthi gave the British an advantage to defeat them
- ❖ Existence of quarrels among members of the royal family e.g Molapa and Jonathan which even made Molapa to collaborate with British against the fellow Basuto
- ❖ Lack of unity among the Basuto i.e chiefs minded about their tribal identity rather than national identity e.g chief Morosi of the Phuthi hence their defeat.
- ❖ The strong and able British leaders under the names of Sir Bartle Frere and John Springs who laid good plans and mobilisation also led to the Basuto defeat.
- ❖ The high determination of the British to crush the African resistance at all cost since it was a period of scramble and partition of South Africa.
- ❖ The disarmament policy which left the Basuto without guns and defeat.
- ❖ The Basuto lacked a strong economy to sustain a prolonged resistance against the British who had an industrial economy.
- ❖ The British use of the scorched earth policy which caused massive destruction of property such as gardens, food stores etc hence starvation among the Basuto fighters leading to their defeat.
- ❖ The role of the missionaries who preached against the Basuto values and also divided Africans along religious lines denying them unity hence their defeat.
- ❖ The British forces were well armed with, maxim guns repeater, etc well funded compared to the Basuto who were armed with out dated guns, narrowbores etc hence their defeat.
- ❖ The British also used too much force to defeat Morosi and his people e.g they were beheaded and mutilated which scared Africans hence their defeat.
- ❖ The Basuto also used the inferior war tactics such as guerilla tactics and avoidance of military

confrontation.

- ❖ Low levels of nationalism among the Basuto also led to their defeat e.g chief Letsie allied with a magistrate to interfere in the Basuto traditional laws.
- ❖ Poor planning, coordination and organization among the Basuto also led to their defeat e.g they entered the war ill equipped.

A conclusion is required

Qn. Explain the causes of the Pedi resistance of 1861 – 1879

INTRODUCTION

- The Pedi are the people who lived in East mountainous areas of Transvaal.
- Their leader was sekukuni who took over power after the death of his father Sekwati.
- The Pedi resistance was a conflict between the Pedi and the Boers and later against the British.

BODY

- ❖ The Pedi wanted to preserve their independence as well as the traditional authority and power.
- ❖ The Boer expansion in the interior led to the war because the more they expanded the more they reached the Pedi land hence the crush.
- ❖ The Pedi wanted to preserve their customs from the foreign influence of the white missionaries who preached against them.
- ❖ The determinant of the whites to fight, conquer and crush the Pedi also led to the war.
- ❖ Sekukuni's hatred for the christian missionaries whom he suspected to be the allies of the Boers who were threatening their independence.
- ❖ The Boer disrespect and abuse of African leaders i.e treating them like common men which annoyed the Pedi hence the war.
- ❖ The able leadership of chief Sekukuni i.e he was able to organize the Pedi people against the whites.
- ❖ The Boer enslavement of the Pedi on their farms and other public works like road construction under poor working conditions like long working hours caused the conflict.
- ❖ The false report that the Pedi had burnt the German mission threatened the Boers leading to the war.

- ❖ The forceful Boer taking away of the Pedi land which was their chief economic tool also caused the Pedi war.
- ❖ The Bapedit's need to protect their cattle from the constant Boer raids.
- ❖ The Pedi state was providing home for the enemy groups which were running away from the Boer advance thus the Boers had to destroy the Pedi state to ensure security.
- ❖ The long held suspicion between the Africans and the whites since the days of the great Trek made them to fight.
- ❖ The Boer's supporting of his brother Mwampuru who was a political rival to chief Sekukuni also caused the war
- ❖ Sekukuni's support from his brother Dinkoanyone gave him confidence to fight the Boers
- ❖ Sekukuni's violation of the 1878 peace treaty annoyed the Boers hence the need to punish him.
- ❖ The British occupation of Transvaal in 1877 brought them into conflict with the Pedi.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The causes of the Pedi resistance were both long term and short term.

b) What were the effects of this resistance?

INTRODUCTION.

Its effects were both positive and negative

BODY

- ❖ The Pedi were defeated by the whites.
- ❖ The Pedi lost their independence to the British.
- ❖ There was great loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation.
- ❖ The war was costly to the Boers and led to the bankruptcy of the Transvaal government.
- ❖ Sekukuni was arrested though later released but later his brother Mwampuru with the support of the British killed him.
- ❖ The resistance indicated African's desire and determination to end European imperialism in South Africa.

- ❖ The Pedi lost their land to the Boers and the British hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ It increased the racial discrimination against the Africans as a way of punishing them for revolting.
- ❖ It led to the increased hatred between the Pedi and the whites.
- ❖ There was massive misery and suffering among the Africans due to the loss of their relatives and land.
- ❖ The Pedi lost their identity and became labourers on the European established plantations.
- ❖ The war encouraged the whites in South Africa to unite under a federal government against the massive Africans.
- ❖ It divided up the Africans, since the Swazi warriors fought alongside the British against the Pedi.
- ❖ It undermined the position of President Burgers of Transvaal.
- ❖ Chief Sekukuni was forced to sign a peace treaty with the Boers after the 1876 raid but he later violated it.
- ❖ Many people were displaced as their land was grabbed by the Boers and the British.
- ❖ It also increased British imperialism in South Africa.

A conclusion is required e.g

The effects of the Pedi resistance were largely negative on the side of the Africans.

A) What led to the Bambata rebellion of 1906?

INTRODUCTION

- This was a Zulu resistance against the British and it was also called the second Anglo – Zulu war.
- The Zulu were led by chief Bambata hence the name Bambata rebellion.

BODY

- ❖ The Zulu need to regain their independence they had lost to the British in 1879 at the battle of Ulundi.

- ❖ The British disrespect of the Zulu leaders i.e treating them like common men e.g Dinzulu annoyed the Zulu hence the war.
- ❖ The able leadership of chief Bambata i.e he united the Zulu and mobilized them into the war against the British.
- ❖ The British disrespect and abuse of the Zulu culture refering every thing Africa as satanic and barbaric annoyed the Zulu leading to the war.
- ❖ Rise of British imperialism and the desire to control the whole of South Africa.
- ❖ The influence of tradition religion i.e the Zulu believed in traditional spirits that promised them humanity against the British bullets hence courage to fight.
- ❖ The forced labour policy of the British i.e the Zulu were over worked on the British established farms and on public works like road construction with out payments.
- ❖ The increased taxation system of the British on the Zulu, i.e every male adult was to pay one pound.
- ❖ The oppressive means of collecting taxes by the British authorities' e.g flogging the Zulu in public, grabbing of their property etc also led the Zulu into the war.
- ❖ The racial discrimination of the British against the Zulu i.e treating Africans like the second class people in their native country forced the Zulu to fight.
- ❖ The British grabbing of the Zulu land and pushing them into reserves where the soils were very poor annoyed them leading to the war.
- ❖ The Zulu were encouraged by their 1st victory over the British at islandlwana in 1879.
- ❖ The role of the Bantu churches which emphaised Africa for Africans encouraged the Zulu to fight against the British.
- ❖ The Boer defeat of the British in the 1st Anglo – Boer war of 1880-1881 also encouraged the Zulu to risk a war with the British.
- ❖ The zulu angry about exiling of Cetewayo who was determined to revive the Zulu militatism annoyed them leading to the 1906 war.
- ❖ The out break of diseases e.g rinder pest that killed their cattle hence blaming the British for causing them leading to the war.

- ❖ The out break of famine in Zulu land which made the zulu to raid the British for food also caused the war.

A conclusion is required e.g

The causes of the Bambata rebellion were both long term and short term

b) How did this rebellion affect the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- The Bombata rebellion had both positive and negative on the people of South Africa.

BODY

- ❖ There was great loss of lives on both side i.e about 3000 Africans and 32 whites died leading to depopulation.
- ❖ There was destruction of property like crops, home lands etc during the course of the rebellion.
- ❖ It led to the growth of African nationalism to fight for African rights.
- ❖ The Zulu lost their land to the British hence weakening them economically..
- ❖ Africans lost confidence in their traditional spirits because they did not protect them from the British bullets.
- ❖ It increased the racial discrimination against the Africans as away of punishing them for revolting.
- ❖ Africans lost completely their independence to the british leading to colonial exploitation of Zulu land.
- ❖ The ring leader Bambata was captured and killed by hanging him.
- ❖ Africans lost their identity and became labours on the European established farms.
- ❖ Agriculture and Trade were put on a standstill during the course of the war.
- ❖ Famine occurred due to the decline in agriculture .
- ❖ Africans continued paying heavy taxes to the British colonialists e.g the poll tax, tax on animals.
- ❖ Africans learnt a lesson that military approach to the white rule was a fruit less venture.

- ❖ It marked an important step towards the formation of the union government in 1910 to fight against the Africans
- ❖ The Zulu lost most of their cattle to the British.
- ❖ After the war some administrative reforms were made e.g the 1908 bill which allowed the appointment of the 4 whites to represent Africans interests in the legislative council.
- ❖ Dinizulu was arrested by the British on suspicion that he supported the rebellion.
- ❖ There was displacement of people from their original home lands due to the fear of losing their lives.

Conclusively, the effects of the Bambata rebellion were largely negative on the Africans.

Qn Explain the causes of the Nama-Herero rebellion.

INTRODUCTION

- This was the rebellion among the Nama and the Herero against the Germans in Namibia and it took place between 1904 -1905.
- The Herero were the 1st to rebel on 12th January 1904 and the Nama on October 1904.
- It was organized and led by Samuel maherero, Jacob Mulenga and Hendrick witbcol against General Lothar Von Trotha.

BODY

- ❖ The desire by the Nama and the Herero to regain their independence they had lost to the Germans in 1884.
- ❖ The German's forceful taking away of the African productive and grazing land.
- ❖ The increased forced labour imposed on the Africans on the German farms and other public works with less pay if paid, annoyed the Africans hence the war.
- ❖ The heavy taxes imposed on the Namibians e.g the hut tax, dog tax etc also annoyed them hence the war.
- ❖ The Germans brutal/oppressive ways of collecting taxes from the Namibians e.g flogging them in public for the failure to pay taxes grabbing their property etc caused the war.
- ❖ The role played by the traditional religious leaders e.g Hendrick Witboi who promised them

protection against the German bullets.

- ❖ The increasing German abuse and disrespect of African cultures i.e they referred them as satanic and barbaric.
- ❖ The able leadership provided by Samuel Maherero and Hendrick Witboi who mobilized their people into a war mood against the Germans.
- ❖ The increasing number of the Germans in Namibia which increased the grabbing of African productive land worried the Namibians hence the war.
- ❖ Africans were not willing to surrender their arms as wanted by the Germans hence the war.
- ❖ African loss of their cattle to the Germans by confiscating them for the failure to recover their debts and others were attacked by rinder pests made them unhappy hence the war.
- ❖ The German's disrespect of African chiefs' e.g ignoring them in policy making, imprisoning them etc made them unhappy hence mobilizing their people against them.
- ❖ The outbreak of drought and famine in Namibia which caused food shortages and loss of cattle leading to raids hence the war.
- ❖ The Germans introduction of pass books which limited African movements in their native country annoyed the Namibians hence the war.
- ❖ The monopolization of Trade in Namibia by the Germans making Africans lose their economic independence also caused the war.

A conclusion is required e.g

The causes of the Nama – Herero rebellion were political, social and economic in nature.

b) What were the effects of the resistance?

INTRODUCTION

- The effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ There was great loss of lives on both sides i.e the Herero lost a half of their population while the Germans lost over 2000 fighters leading to depopulation.
- ❖ The Germans continued imposing heavy taxes on the Africans hence weakening them

economically

- ❖ Forced labour policies of the Germans on the Africans on their farms increased.
- ❖ Africans were defeated hence losing their independence to the Germans.
- ❖ It laid a foundation for future Namibian nationalists like Sam Nujoma to fight for their independence.
- ❖ Africans lost most of their land to the Germans hence becoming squatters in their native country.
- ❖ There was extension of German imperialism into the interior of Namibia.
- ❖ Africans lost trust in their traditional religion because their gods never protected them from the German bullets.
- ❖ African leaders lost their traditional powers and authority and they were killed e.g Witboi.
- ❖ Agriculture declined during the course of the war leading to famine.
- ❖ Trade was also put on a stand still hence poverty among the Africans.
- ❖ There was destruction of property e.g home lands, farms etc were burnt down.
- ❖ It led to the increased misery and suffering among the Africans due to the loss of their dear ones and property.
- ❖ African freedom of movement was restricted thus they were to move with pass books.
- ❖ Africans were pushed into reserves with poor conditions e.g Kalahari Desert as homeless and wonderers.
- ❖ Africans lost their cattle to the Germans hence becoming poor since cattle was their back borne.
- ❖ The war was very expensive to both e.g the Germans used over 120 ,000,000 us dollars.

A conclusion is required e.g

- The effects of the Nama – Herero rebellion were very destructive on the Africans.

c) Why were the Africans defeated in this rebellion?

INTRODUCTION.

- The reasons for the defeat of the Africans were both political, military social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ The Germans got to know about the rebellion earlier thus they prepared accordingly.
- ❖ Africans were not united e.g at first the Herero allied with the Germans against the Nama.
- ❖ The Germans had superior weapons e.g the Maxim guns compared to the Africans with spears, arrows etc. hence their defeat
- ❖ Africans depended on false prophets' e.g prophet sturman who promised them protection from the German bullets.
- ❖ The Germans had mastered the geographical set up of Namibia which was an advantage to them over the African
- ❖ Africans had a poor economy which could not sustain a prolonged war against the Germans who had an industrial economy.
- ❖ Africans lacked war experience compared to the Germans who had fought many wars in Europe hence their defeat.
- ❖ The out break of drought and epidemics like rinder pests in Namibia also weakened them leading to their defeat.
- ❖ Africans lacked constant supply of guns during the course of the war.
- ❖ The Germans used the scorched earth policy which destroyed farms, water points etc hence denying African food and water during the course of the war.
- ❖ The Germans avoided pitched battles and resorted to guerilla warfare hence weakening the Africans.
- ❖ Africans lacked proper organization hence their defeat.
- ❖ The determination of Germans to crush the Africans at all cost.
- ❖ Africans had low levels of nationalism which denied them a chance of coming together to fight a common enemy hence their defeat.
- ❖ Weak African leadership especially after Samuel Maherero and Handrick Witboi e.g Simon

Cooper of the Nama was bribed by the German.

❖ Etc.

Conclusively the defeat of Africans was largely due to disunity and low levels of Nationalism.

Qn A. Describe the activities of the Christian missionaries in South Africa during the 19th century

INTRODUCTION.

- These were a group of different religious people from Europe with a lot of open aims like spreading Christianity civilization, stopping slave trade among others.
- Missionaries in south Africa include; John phillip, Van Derkamp, Dr Moffat.
- The missionary groups that operated in south Africa were, The London missionary society which worked among the Xhisa and the Khoikhoi, The free church of Scotland operated in the areas of Natal, The Dutch reformed church which operated among the Dutch settlers etc.

BODY

- ❖ They preached / spread Christianity to Africans
- ❖ They established churches and mission stations e.g Bethels dorp etc which acted as religious centres and homes for the runaway slaves.
- ❖ They built schools to reduce illiteracy among the Africans e.g. LOVEDALE.
- ❖ They advocated for equality, humanity and liberty in south Africa.
- ❖ As humanitarans, they directed their work to the stopping of slavery among the Africans.
- ❖ They protected Africans from cruel Boer masters e.g john Phillip.
- ❖ They helped Africans especially the Xhasa to regain their land from the Boers.
- ❖ Some missionaries acted as advisors to some African leaders' e.g Mosheshe used them in his administration.
- ❖ They put pressure on the British government to introduce the black circuit courts hence restoring African civil rights.
- ❖ They discouraged some African culture like polygamy which they saw as barbaric
- ❖ They equipped Africans with a variety of skills e.g brick laying, carpentry etc.

- ❖ They taught Africans modern methods of farming which increased agricultural output e.g application of fertilizers, mechanization among others.
- ❖ They advocated for the removal of the pass books which limited African movement.
- ❖ They called for the provision of formal education to Africans.
- ❖ They supplied fire arms to Africans to protect them against their enemies mainly the Boers.
- ❖ They developed African languages by putting them into writing e.g the Bantu language.
- ❖ They influenced the passing of the 50th ordinance in 1828 which restored the civil and political rights of the Africans.
- ❖ They reported cruel Boer masters to courts and even called for fair hearing to African cases.
- ❖ They called for the development of transport and communication networks in their areas of operation e.g Van Derkemp.
- ❖ They encouraged hard work and cooperation among the Africans e.g Van Derkemp.
- ❖ They also called for women emancipation and encouraged men to share work equally with women.
- ❖ They encouraged Africans to develop skills in legitimate trade for their survival.
- ❖ They discouraged racial discrimination and called for equality.
- ❖ They interfered in the African local politics paving way for the colonization of south Africa.
- ❖ They traded with the Africans.
- ❖ They also called for the reduction of the long working hours of the slaves.
- ❖ Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

- The activities of Christian missionaries in south Africa were both political, social and economic in nature.

B) What were the results of these activities on the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- The activities of missionaries left a lot of social, political and economic effects on the people of South African and they were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ They converted Africans into Christianity hence undermining African tradition religion.
- ❖ They promoted dis - unity among Africans on religious lines e.g the converts and the non Christian converts.
- ❖ Through their mission stations they housed for the run away slaves
- ❖ They helped Africans to develop skills in legitimate trade.
- ❖ They developed African languages e.g the Bantu languages were put into writing and by 1801; the 1st spelling Koisian book was printed by the London missionary society.
- ❖ They provided African with educational values knowledge and skills.
- ❖ They defended the rights of Africans and saved them against harsh Boer masters.
- ❖ They improved on the health conditions of Africans by curing the deadly diseases like malaria etc.
- ❖ They developed foreign languages in south Africa e.g English, Dutch, Latin, French etc
- ❖ They improved on transport and communication in the country by building roads, railways and bridges.
- ❖ They provided good political advice to some African chiefs e.g Mosheshe of the Basuto nation.
- ❖ They improved on agriculture via scientific means, introducing hybrid seeds, crop rotation, use of fertilizers etc leading to the increased agricultural output.
- ❖ They helped the Xhosa to regain some of their lost land to the Boers.
- ❖ They promoted equality of all races through building racially mixed schools e.g Lovedale in 1841.
- ❖ Their schools became training grounds for the early African nationalists e.g. Nelson Mandela, Albert Lithuli etc who fought for their independence.
- ❖ They discovered and reported areas of colonial and economic potential to their home government which later threatened the country's independence.

- ❖ They introduced western architecture of building square houses using bricks tile roofing and iron sheets.
- ❖ Through their technical schools, Africans acquired skills of brick laying, shoe making etc hence improving on their standards of living.
- ❖ They provided Africans with educational values, knowledge and skills.
- ❖ They translated the Bible from English to local languages.
- ❖ Their activities led to the emergency of independent churches in South Africa because they were restrictive.
- ❖ African culture was undermined i.e they referred to them as barbaric and satanic.
- ❖ Their activities led to a class of collaborators e.g Moroka of the Barolong collaborated with British against fellow Africans.
- ❖ They trained Africans for white collar jobs like doctors , teachers, layers etc hence making them job seekers than job creators.
- ❖ Their warm relations with Africans worsened their relations with the Dutch leading to the outbreak of the Great Trek. Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

Missionaries were the fore runners of European imperialism hence the flag followed the cross.

C) Explain the role played by missionaries in the colonization of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION .

- These were inspired different religious groups to spread Christianity.
- Missionaries in South Africa include, John Phillip, Van Der Kemp, Dr Moffat etc.
- And the missionary groups that operated in South Africa were The London missionary society, The free church of Scotland, The Dutch Reformed church etc
- Missionaries were strong instruments towards the establishment of colonial rule in Africa hence the saying that “the flag followed the cross”

BODY

- ❖ They softened the hearts of the Africans using biblical injunctions like don't kill" love your neighbour as you love your self " Happy are the poor in the kingdom of God" etc. with such words Africans lost sense and morale of resisting against the colonialists hence leading to colonization of the country.
- ❖ They interpreted African languages which later acted as an advantage to the colonialists because it eased communication between them and the Africans.
- ❖ They divided Africans basing on religious lines and education hence making them unable to stage a meaningful resistance against the united colonialists.
- ❖ They acted as spies for the colonialists providing vital information as regards the peaceful and hostile societies which helped them to decide on the method of occupation they showed impose in every specific area.
- ❖ They put up mission centres which later acted as head quarters of colonialists.
- ❖ Missionaries' convinced Africans to sign treaties which were later used to propagate colonialism since they acted as signs of effective occupation as per the Berlin conference of 1884 -1885.
- ❖ They drew maps to demacate areas of influence for their home governments hence easing the colonization process.
- ❖ They even financed some colonialists e.g the church missionary society gave some money to the British south African company to finance colonial rule when it had ran bankrupt.
- ❖ The established roads and railways which eased the movement of the colonialists and their military hard ware.
- ❖ They also administered some areas on behalf of their home governments which areas were later claimed by their home governments.
- ❖ They condemned African barbaric cultures which made Africans to believe that European institutions, cultures etc were better hence weakening the African spirit of resistance hence leading to the colonization of South Africa.
- ❖ They appealed for home governments protection against the hostile Africans and in the name of protection to their missionaries they ended up colonizing the country.

- ❖ Missionary education further created a class of Africans who served as efficient tools in the establishment of colonial rule in the country.
- ❖ They involved themselves in the grabbing of African land to establish their mission stations which later became bases for the colonialists.

Conclusively, the European colonialisation of Africa could have been difficult without missionary assistance.

D) Explain the contribution of the following missionaries in the History of South Africa.

A. Johanne Theodorus Van Der Kemp.

INTRODUCTION

- He was the earliest / first missionary to arrive in South Africa in 1779.
- He was a Dutch and an agent of the London missionary society.
- He was a brilliant scholar and army officer and he carried out his missionary work among the Xhosa and the khoi khoi.

BODY

- ❖ He set up a mission station of Bethels dorp near the future port Elizabeth which later accommodated for the runaway slaves.
- ❖ He encouraged Africans to abandon primitive cultures like human sacrifice murder of twins etc and adopt western values such as Christianity monogamy etc.
- ❖ He championed the Africans standards of living through encouraging them to look for better jobs.
- ❖ He also spread the reading and writing cultures to the Africans
- ❖ He encouraged Africans to develop skills in legitimate trade to improve on their standards of living.
- ❖ He was a strong advocate of women emancipation and encouraged men to share work equally with women.
- ❖ He advocated for the rule of law and justice in South Africa.
- ❖ He was against racial segregation and the activities of the Dutch reformed church.

- ❖ He called for freedom of movement, worship and brother hood.
- ❖ He encouraged the development of transport and communication networks in south Africa to ease the missionary work.
- ❖ The also encouraged hard work and cooperation among Africans.
- ❖ He introduced modern farming methods e.g hybrid seeds, crop rotation etc to increase agricultural out put.
- ❖ He helped to translate the Bible from English to local languages hence easing the spread of Christianity.
- ❖ He built many churches to enforce Christianity e.g Bethlsdrop.
- ❖ He advocated for equality before God and the law of all people in South Africa.
- ❖ He was so common/ popular among the khoi khoi and he dressed like them.
- ❖ He was against the unfair labour policies of the Boers e.g long working hours etc.
- ❖ He introduced the European architecture of building square houses using bricks, stones and iron roofing. Etc

A conclusion is required e.g

Van Der Kemp achieved much in the history of South Africa but more importantly he called for the rule of law and justice.

B) DR JOHN PHILIP

INTRODUCTION

- He was a son of Scottish weaver who had a fine, intellect and a very strong personality.
- He was a member of the London missionary society and one of the outstanding missionaries who helped in the spread of Christianity in South Africa.
- He worked mainly among the khoi khoi the Griqua and the Bantu and he came to South Africa when the black slaves were very much oppressed by the whites.

BODY

- ❖ He championed the fight for African rights and strongly condemned Boer hostility towards

Africans.

- ❖ Through his efforts, the non whites especially the khoi khoi the Griqua got their freedom.
- ❖ He was instrumental in the establishment of the circuit courts where Africans sued their cruel Boer masters.
- ❖ He also influenced the passing of the 50th ordinance which gave Africans their civil and political rights.
- ❖ He promoted the principle of equality to all mankind in South Africa.
- ❖ He also acted as a mediator between the Xhosa and the Boers in the Kaffir wars.
- ❖ He always persuaded and encouraged Africans to buy land
- ❖ He also encouraged Africans to look for better job opportunities away from the Boers.
- ❖ He studied and wrote African languages like the Zulu and Xhosa respectively.
- ❖ He established churches to promote Christianity in South Africa.
- ❖ He strongly condemned the discriminative Dutch reformed church.
- ❖ He encouraged western culture e.g education Christianity and Africans dropped their traditional cultures like idol worship, polygamy etc.
- ❖ Encouraged Africans to take their children to schools where they acquired technical skills such as carpentry.
- ❖ He encouraged the use of modern agricultural methods such as hybrid seeds, irrigation farming, use of fertilizers. Etc to ensure increased agricultural out put.
- ❖ He called for the improved welfare among the Africans.
- ❖ He discouraged laziness and encouraged hard work among the Africans.
- ❖ He called for the total ban of slavery in South Africa which was achieved in 1838.
- ❖ He called for the improved transport and communication in South Africa.
- ❖ He advocated for the equal legal rights among the Africans and the whites in South Africans.
- ❖ He encouraged reading and writing culture among the Africans to help them understand the gospel etc.

Conclusively, Dr John Phillip greatly achieved for the Africans though he had some weaknesses but they cannot out weight his contributions.

E) Explain the role of the Dutch reformed church to the peoples of south Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- It was the earliest Christian church in south Africa.
- It was formed by the Dutch early settlers.
- Its preaching were based on the Calvinist principles in the old testament.
- It started that God loved the Dutch and cursed the Africans

BODY

To the whites

- ❖ It promoted the belief that the whites were superior to the Africans.
- ❖ It encouraged white mistreatment of the Africans and for them it was normal for the whites to kill Africans.
- ❖ It never supported human rights for the non whites.
- ❖ It united the Dutch settlers in South Africa through encouraging compulsory pilgrimages.
- ❖ It emphasized trade among the Dutch settlers for economic development.
- ❖ It encouraged the grabbing of African land by the whites to establish settlements and plantations.
- ❖ It believed that God chose the Dutch to preserve the white civilization.
- ❖ The church promoted racial segregation which later resulted into apartheid policy in South Africa.
- ❖ It also promoted Boer spirit of Nationalism pride and greed in South Africa.
- ❖ It only converted and baptized Dutch members
- ❖ It encouraged wars between the whites and the Africans e.g. the kaffir wars.

- ❖ It encouraged the enslavement of the Africans on the Boer established farms.
- ❖ It promoted inferiority complex among Africans because it preached that Africans were cursed by God.
- ❖ It was partly responsible for the great trek because it encouraged Boer isolation, pride which influenced them to trek into the interior.
- ❖ The activities of this church encouraged the Dutch to take over Transvaal as their promised land of Canaan.
- ❖ The church established schools to educate the Dutch children but they only provided elementary education.
- ❖ It encouraged marriage among the Boers only and discouraged inter racial mixing.
- ❖ It influenced the political, social and economic activities of the Dutch East Indian company etc

To the Africans.

- ❖ They persecuted Africans and hunted them like wild animals.
- ❖ It undermined African culture and religion since they referred to them as satanic and barbaric.
- ❖ The church promoted inferiority complex among the Africans because it preached that they were cursed by God.
- ❖ It promoted high rate of illiteracy among Africans since they were not allowed to access education.
- ❖ It led to the displacement of Africans since their land was taken by the Boers.
- ❖ Africans became poor as their resources were exploited by the Boers.
- ❖ Mainly Africans lost their lives during the wars of resistance against the church activities like land grabbing.
- ❖ It led to the general backwardness among Africans since they lost their cattle, land and not allowing them to access education.
- ❖ It led to the rise of independent churches due to their arrogance and exploitation over the Africans.
- ❖ Its activities made the Africans to hate the Boers more.

- ❖ The church believed that God cursed the Africans.
- ❖ It prepared the way for the growth of African nationalism to fight for their civil and political rights.
- ❖ Africans lost their cattle during the fighting against the Boers. Etc.

In conclusion, the activities of the Dutch Reformed church were positive to the whites but more destructive on the Africans.

F) What were the problems faced by the Christian missionaries in South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

In carrying out their evangelist and humanitarian work, they faced a number of social, political, economic and geographical problems as explained below.

BODY

- ❖ They faced a problem of tropical diseases like malaria, yellow fever etc. that claimed many of them which retarded the progress of their work in the area.
- ❖ Opposition from African tradition religions and cultures because they were teaching contrarily to them e.g. Christianity emphasized monogamy yet Africans were polygamous.
- ❖ They faced a problem of inadequate personnel to serve a wider area thus some parts of the country were not attended.
- ❖ Language barrier i.e. they had no knowledge of the local language making it difficult for them to spread the gospel.
- ❖ Opposition from the Boers because they accused them of giving education to the Africans.
- ❖ Poor transport and communication hindered their work since by that time there were no good roads in many parts of South Africa.
- ❖ They faced a problem of thick forests, high mountains, steep valleys etc which limited their movements in some parts of South Africa.
- ❖ Wild animals like lions, hyenas' etc attacked them and complicated their work.
- ❖ The rise of independent churches which many Africans joined leaving the missionary churches.

- ❖ Occasional shortage of funds due to the long distances from their home governments.
- ❖ They faced a problem of hostile tribes e.g. the Xhosa and the Zulu.
- ❖ Missionaries also had quarrels and misunderstandings among themselves which limited the progress of their work.
- ❖ They were unfamiliar with the interior of south Africa i.e. they lacked geographical knowledge of some areas.

A conclusion is required e.g.

Missionaries faced a number of challenges in carrying out their duty, some of them seems to have been of their own making while others were beyond their own making.

Qn A Explain the reasons for the formation of independent churches in south Africa.

INTRODUCTION:

- These were break away churches from the original missionary churches under African leadership.
- They were also called the Bantu churches.
- They were three major churches i.e. Zionists, Messianic and Ethiopian. And the key leaders were Isiah Tsembe, Nathanile Tile etc.

BODY

- ❖ Denial of African leadership in churches yet they had undergone theological institutions annoyed them leading to the formation of independent churches.
- ❖ Disrespect of African cultures and values by the white missionaries. They for example condemned polygamy, taking alcohol, African dances and drama they also rejected African names for Baptism which annoyed the Africans.
- ❖ The belief that Jesus was a messiah for the Jews and Europeans only encouraged Africans to form their own churches waiting for a black messiah.
- ❖ They were formed as a reaction against European colonialism since Africans had learnt that their major aim was to prepare a ground for European colonial rule.
- ❖ Lack of state control was a serious reason for the rise of independent churches especially

among the protestant missions who lacked close supervision with British protectorate government in Africa.

- ❖ The role of western education that a wakened minds and made them away of the European exploitation.
- ❖ The role of western education that a wakened African minds and made them away of the European exploitation.
- ❖ The role of Pan African movement that preached against slavery, exploitation and oppression of the Africans by the whites.
- ❖ The need to spread Christianity among Africans in line with African cultures encouraged them to form independent churches.
- ❖ The role of the Africans / blacks in the Diaspora i.e. Dubois Marcus Garvey, William Sylvester etc who always demanded for African rights.
- ❖ The spirit of Ethiopians that emphasized "Africa for Africans" inspired Africans to form their own churches especially after the defeat of the Italians at the battle of Adowa.
- ❖ The need to fight against racial discrimination of some missionary churches e.g. the Dutch Reformed church was quite segregative nature.
- ❖ The role played by African leaders i.e. isiah Tsembe and Nathanile Tile etc who mobilized their people to break away from the European led churches.
- ❖ Segregation in the distribution of missionary services i.e. in some villages, schools, health center and roads were established while some other villages were ignored hence making Africans loose hope from missionaries.
- ❖ The process of conversion to Christianity was to long e.g. it reacquired Baptism etc thus making Africans to break away from the European churches.
- ❖ There were conflicts between missionary groups hence encouraging Africans to break away because they never wanted to get involved in their conflicts.
- ❖ The need to unite Africans without religious divisions also led to the formation of independent churches.
- ❖ The need to prevent white exploitation of Africans through unfair taxes, land grabbing etc.

- ❖ The rise of people with special gifts e.g. healing preaching which could not be found among the European churches

A conclusion is required e.g

The rise of independent churches in Africa was due to the racism and lack of charity on the part of the European missionaries.

B). what were the contribution of the above churches to the history of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

Generally independent churches contributed positively to Africans in political, social and economic aspects.

BODY

- ❖ They made Africans aware of the European exploitation and discrimination.
- ❖ They created unity among Africans because they converted Africans from all parts of South Africa and accepted them as Christians.
- ❖ They trained African leaders e.g. Bishop Desmond Tutu who later played a big role in the liberation of South Africa.
- ❖ They preached against land grabbing by Europeans and enslavement of the Africans.
- ❖ They fought against apartheid and racial segregation of the European missionaries.
- ❖ They managed to preserve African traditions along side Christianity e.g polygamy.
- ❖ They gave Africans confidence that they can manage their own affairs.
- ❖ They established schools which provided Africans with skills to acquire skilled jobs like the whites.
- ❖ They promoted equality between Africans and the whites because they preached that all races are equal before God.
- ❖ They influenced African resistances against European colonialists e.g. the Bambata Belellian, Nama –Herero etc.
- ❖ They promoted African local languages e.g. the Zulu language by translating the bible in local languages.

- ❖ They helped in the spread of Christianity to the whole of south Africa.
- ❖ They called for African civil and political rights.
- ❖ They preached that Africa was for Africans thus an urgent need for independence.
- ❖ They provided medical care to Africans that had run away from European missionary churches.

A conclusion is required e.g

In conditions, independent churches inspired Africans Nationalism and the formation of political parties in south Africa to fight for African civil and political rights.

Qn A. Describe the economic changes that took place in south Africa between 1867 and 1910.

INTRODUCTION

- This was a period of the mineral revolution in South Africa.
- Before this period South Africa's economy was generally weak.
- It was an agro- based and mainly subsistence e.g. Orange Free State depended on crop and sheep rearing, Cape depended on wool and wine and Transvaal depended on cattle and sheep rearing.
- Politically, some African states were very stronger than the Boers e.g. the Basuto state of Mosheshe, The Swazi nation, the Zulu were militarily superior.
- Socially, the Boers and Africans were largely illiterate because of lack of educational facilities. Thus they lacked skilled man power.
- In 1867, diamond was discovered at Kimberly and in 1884; gold was also discovered at Wit – waters land.
- Later other minerals like coal, copper, manganese etc were discovered. Leading to a number of developments which include;

BODY

- ❖ The economy of South Africa turned from agricultural to an industrial economy i.e. many industries were set up e.g. textile industries etc.
- ❖ There was development of transport networks in Boer republics such as roads, railway lines, bridges etc. e.g. Natal –Transvaal railway in 1891 and The Delagoa –Transvaal line in 1887.

- ❖ There was development of ports on the coast e.g. The East London port which eased the transportation of goods from Europe to south Africa.
- ❖ There was establishment of telephone lines and Telegrams to link the cape to London and to other parts of south Africa.
- ❖ Many steamer ships were established on many rivers.
- ❖ Many Banks were set up to cater for commercial transactions e.g. standard bank, Orient Bank, National Bank of orange free state etc.
- ❖ Insurance companies also took foundation to cater for increasing risks in business.
- ❖ There was increase in exports and development of import – export trade which increased on the country's revenue.
- ❖ There was increase in population as people migrated from rural areas to towns.
- ❖ Land became expensive around the mines.
- ❖ The Boer states emerged from poverty into well established states due to the wealth they acquired from minerals.
- ❖ Agriculture shifted from subsistence to commercial.
- ❖ There was introduction of new methods of farming in south Africa e.g. crop rotation, use of Tractors and combined harvesters hence increasing productivity.
- ❖ Urbanization also took foundation in which small towns developed into big cities e.g. East – London, Johannesburg, Durban etc.
- ❖ There was development of modern labour migrant system in which many people flocked the mining centres to look for jobs e.g. African, Indians, Uitlanders.
- ❖ There was establishment of mining companies in South Africa e.g Debeer Mining company.
- ❖ There emerged production of different sources of energy e.g. the hydro electric dams and thermo energy.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The period between 1867 and 1910 created a profound change in the history of South Africa which superseded the earlier changes brought in by the Great Trek and the Mfecane period.

B) How did these changes affect the Africans and the Boers?

INTRODUCTION

The effects of these changes were both positive and negative and they cut across all aspects of life i.e. political, economic and social life.

BODY

- ❖ Africans around the mines lost their land especially the Tswana, the Zulu etc.
- ❖ Africans were given some low class jobs in mines as track drivers and as mineral extractors.
- ❖ Africans in mines were discriminated against by the whites which gave rise to apartheid policy in south Africa.
- ❖ Africans changed from rural to urban life and this changed their social values.
- ❖ There was rural urban migration where Africans left villages into towns leading to famine because of food shortages.
- ❖ There was intermarriages between the British and Africans leading to the formation of the coloureds.
- ❖ There was break down of African families and social ties as African men left their homes in favour of the mining jobs and urban life.
- ❖ Africans lost their political independence to the whites due to increased European influence in S.A e.g. the British annexed Basuta land and Swaziland.
- ❖ There was growth of African Nationalism because of the racial discrimination of the whites.
- ❖ African economy became moneternised i.e. there was a shift from barter trade to money trade.
- ❖ There was break down of African cultures as Africans copied the European ways of life e.g. dressing etc.
- ❖ Africans who lived in urban centres were now determined by the level of income and status of jobs unlike before when the number of women and children determined the status of African men.
- ❖ Africans ended up in slums because of the low income given to them.
- ❖ Africans became dependents on the whites and their lives were basically determined by the

whites.

- ❖ Some Africa lost their lives in mine accidents.

To the Boers.

- ❖ The Boer states emerged from poverty to wealthy states due to the wealth they acquired from minerals.
- ❖ It led to the British annexation of the Boer republics of Transvaal and orange free state.
- ❖ It resulted into the first and the second Anglo- Boer wars due to the need to control the mineral wealth of South Africa.
- ❖ The Boers lost their land to the British e.g near Griqualand.
- ❖ There was shortage of labour on Boer farms as African ran to work in the mines.
- ❖ The Boers got good jobs in the mines and industries hence improving their standards of living.
- ❖ Many Uitlanders entered Boer republics, some thing which annoyed the Boers.
- ❖ Bad practices like theft increased in the Boer republics.
- ❖ The Boer communication net work improved due to the establishment of many telephone lines and Telegrams.
- ❖ It made the Boers to unite against the British in order to protect their mineral wealth.
- ❖ There was increased Boer nationalism in the area.
- ❖ It increased Anglo – Boer enemityy as they competed for minerals hence delaying the union of the Boers and the British.
- ❖ Tne Boers were put into an industrial economy as many industries grew up.
- ❖ There was development of transport networks in the Boer republics such as roads, bridges, railway lines etc.
- ❖ The British stopped their policy of supporting the Africans in favour of the Boers.
- ❖ Some Boers lost their lives in mine accidents and wars with the British.
- ❖ It later forced unity between the Boers and the British to protect the mineral wealth.

In conclusion the period between 1867 and 1910 increased conflict between the Boers and Africans and later between the Boers and the British resulting into the Anglo – Boer wars of 1880-1881, 1895 and 1899 -1902.

Qn C. How did the discovery of minerals in south Africa affect the following.

a) AFRICANS

INTRODUCTION.

- This was a period of mineral revolution in south Africa.
- Before this period, South Africa's economy was generally wealth.
- It was an agro- based and mainly subsistence e.g. orange free state depended on crop and sheep rearing, cape depended on wood and wine, Transvaal depended on cattle and sheep rearing.
- Politically, some African states were very strong than the Boers e.g the Basuto nation, The Swazi nation and The Zulu were militarily superior.
- In 1867, diamond was discovered at Kimberly and Gold in 1884 at Witwaters land.
- Later other minerals such as coal, copper, manganese etc were discovered.
- The discovery of minerals had both positive and negative effects on the Africans.

BODY

- ❖ **Politically** it led to the rise of Elite African class e.g. Nelson Mandela, water Sisulu, Oliver Thambo, Albert lithuli etc who later fought for African rights.
- ❖ There was increased African Nationalism as disgranted African workers in the mines joined together to fight for their rights.
- ❖ There was formation of political parties' e.g. the South African Native congress in 1912 which later became ANCto fight for African civil and political rights.
- ❖ It shifted the balance of power in favour of the whites due to the wealth they acquired from minerals.
- ❖ It also increased British influence on Africans, they thus took over Swaziland, Lesotho and Botswana.

- ❖ It confirmed the white supremacy over Africans thus clearing way for the Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- ❖ There was increased enmity between Africans and the whites due to their discriminative policies against Africans.
- ❖ Africans lost their independence to the whites.
- ❖ Africans began disrespecting their local leaders since they were power less.
- ❖ There were African rebellions against the whites due to the increased conflicts between Africans and the whites e.g. The Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- ❖ It enabled Africans to acquire guns from the whites for security though of poor quality.
- ❖ **Economically**, Africans got a chance for new jobs in mines such as mineral extractors, drivers.
- ❖ They acquired markets for their agricultural products especially those who lived around the mines.
- ❖ Africans lost their land to the whites especially in mineralized areas e.g Griqualand hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ Agriculture declined because strong men left villages to towns and mines to look for jobs leaving there children and women who were not productive leading to famine.
- ❖ Africans became poor because they were paid low wages.
- ❖ Africans were discriminate by the whites in employment i.e. they were to offer unskilled labour and skilled labour was reserved for the whites.
- ❖ There was introduction of cash economy in south Africa though Africans were paid low wages.
- ❖ **Socially**, there was break down of African families and social ties as African men left their homes in favour of the mining jobs and urban life.
- ❖ Africans lost their lives due to mining accidents leading to depopulation.
- ❖ There was break down of tribal barriers for those who moved to towns and mines.
- ❖ There was loss of cultures and traditional values as many Africans adopted western

cultures.

- ❖ There was rural – urban migration where Africans left villages into towns.
- ❖ Africans who migrated to urban centres lived in slums and reserves under poor living conditions.
- ❖ Africans in towns / mining areas adopted European bad practices e.g. prostitution, theft, smoking etc.
- ❖ Money became the new symbol of wealth and status but not children, cows and wives as it was before the discovery of minerals.

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion, the effects of the discovery of mineral were social, political and economic in nature.

B. Whites (Boers and the British)

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ There were both positive and negative effects and they were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ **Politically**, it increased Boer nationalism and desire for independence.
- ❖ It led to the British annexation of the Boer republics e.g. Transvaal in 1877 and Orange Free State.
- ❖ It also led to the rise of political hardliners e.g. Paul Kruger of the Boers and Cecil Rhodes of the British.
- ❖ It resulted into conflicts between the Boers and the British which later led to the Anglo – Boer wars of 1880 -1881, 1895 and 1899 -1902.
- ❖ It increased British imperialism in the area which later resulted into the scramble and partition of the country.
- ❖ It led to the establishment of the British South African Company with the aim of colonizing South Africa.

- ❖ It increased Anglo –Boer enmity as they competed for minerals hence delaying the union of the Boers and the British.
- ❖ It led to the Boer alliance with the Germans in Namibia and the Portuguese in Mozambique against the British.
- ❖ It later led to the union of the Boers and the British in order to exploit the mineral wealth of South Africa.
- ❖ **Economically** there was increased wealth and capital investment of the British and the Boers in South Africa.
- ❖ There was shortage of labour on the Boer farms since Africans shifted to mines for employments.
- ❖ There was destruction of property during the wars fought between the Boers and the British e.g. in the 1880-1881, 1895 and 1899-1902 wars.
- ❖ The Boers got good jobs in the mines and industries hence improving their standards of living.
- ❖ There was growth of rich individuals e.g. Cecil Rhodes of the British.
- ❖ **Socially**, bad practices like theft increased in the Boer republics.
- ❖ There was loss of some Boer lives in mine accidents and wars etc.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The discovery of minerals worsened the already hostile relationship between the Boers and the British leading to the Anglo Boer wars of 1880 -1881, and 1899 -1902.

Qn. A What caused the conflict among the whites between 1880-1881

INTRODUCTION

- This was the first Anglo –Boer war fought between the Boers and the British in South Africa.
- It was also called the first Gentleman's war.
- The Boers were led by Paul Kruger and the British by Cecil Rhodes.

BODY

- ❖ The British annexation of Transvaal in 1877 was negatively welcomed by the Boers and they decided to fight in order to regain their independence.
- ❖ The discovery of minerals i.e. diamond in 1867 at kimbery and the subsequent conflicts over the diamond fieds led to the war since each party wanted to control the mineralized area.
- ❖ The long term enmity between the Boers and the British since the British settlement at the cape also caused the war.
- ❖ The failure of the Boers to pay back the loans they had got from the British at the cape led to the first Anglo – Boer war.
- ❖ The defeat of the British by the Zulu in 1879 at the battle of islandhlwana encouraged the Boers to fight them because the war had left them weak.
- ❖ The rise of Paul Kruger the Boer leader and Cecil Rhodes the Cape prime minister led to the war because they could not settle their problems peacefully.
- ❖ The Boer refusal of the British federation scheme made the British to use force to implement their policy leading to the first Anglo – Boer war.
- ❖ Presence of few British troops in Transvaal i.e they were about 3500 which encouraged the Boers to fight because they were assured of victory.
- ❖ The issue of animal Boer farmers who refused to pay taxes to the British authorities leading to the confiscation of their property, an act which made the Boers to attack the British to rescue their property hence the war.
- ❖ It was a time of scramble and partition of Africa and wars were the means of clolnial expansion hence the first Anglo- Boer war.
- ❖ The rise of Gladstome and his liberal party as a new British prime minister he condemned the British annexation of Transvaal and reasoned that the Boers should run their affairs which gave the Boers moral support against the British hence the war.
- ❖ The Boer – German alliance/cooperation threatened the British in area hence the first Anglo- Boer war.
- ❖ The Boer need to attain a representative assembly i.e they wanted the parliament in

Transvaal and Natal to have both British and Boers represented..

- ❖ The promised support to the Boers of Transvaal from other Boer republics for example Orange Free State encouraged the Boers to fight the British.
- ❖ The Boer discrimination of the British goods in favour of German and Portuguese goods annoyed the British leading to the first Anglo – Boer war.
- ❖ The British disrespect of the Dutch culture in the Transvaal republic e.g. replacing their language with English language provided a reason for the first Anglo- Boer war.
- ❖ The Boer mistreatment of the Uitlanders i.e denying them voting rights, not allowing them to use English etc annoyed the British hence the war as a way of protecting their nationals.

A conclusion is required

B). How did this conflict affect the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION.

- Its effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ It resulted into the defeat of the British at Majuba hills by the Boers hence humiliation.
- ❖ It increased Boer nationalism and esteem due to the victory over the British.
- ❖ It resulted into the signing of the Pretoria convention in 1881 which ended the war.
- ❖ By the Pretoria convention, Transvaal regained her independence that was recognized by the British.
- ❖ The Boer victory made Paul Kruger more popular and he was re- elected as a president of Transvaal.
- ❖ It created unity of the Boer republics of Transvaal and orange free state against the British.
- ❖ The civil rights of the Uitlanders were highly recognized in the Pretoria convention of 1881 e.g. they were granted citizenship right in the Boer republics.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the Boers and the British heading to other wars e.g. the Jameson raid of 1895.

- ❖ It laid a foundation for the outbreak of the second Anglo – Boer war of 1899-1902 because the British were looking forward for another war of revenge.
- ❖ It led to the failure of the federation scheme because the two were no longer willing to come together.
- ❖ There was great destruction of property e.g. crops and live stock were destroyed.
- ❖ There was great loss of lives on both sides leading to depopulation.
- ❖ The war caused misery and suffering due to loss of dear ones and destruction of property.
- ❖ Trade was put on a stand still during the course of the war hence poverty especially among Africans.
- ❖ Agriculture also declined during the course of the war leading to famine.
- ❖ The war increased the race of territorial acquisition in south Africa e.g. the British took over Bechuana land in 1895.
- ❖ In the Pretoria convention, the Boers were refused to relate with any other powers without the British concern.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The effects of the first Anglo –Boer war were political, social and economical.

Qn A. What led to the signing of the 1881 Pretoria convention?

INTRODUCTION

- This was a peace treaty signed between the Boers and the British to end the first Anglo Boer war of 1880-1881.
- It was signed in the Transvaal's capital Pretoria .
- Paul Kruger and Willem Jourbert signed on behalf of the Boers and Lord Evelyn wood for the British.

BODY

- ❖ To end the long term enmity between the Boers and the British since the British settlement at the cape in 1795.

- ❖ To end the first Anglo-Boer war of 1880 -1881.
- ❖ To check on the increasing Boer nationalism and esteem which was growing day and night.
- ❖ The need to stop the unnecessary competition between the Boers and the British over trade and commerce.
- ❖ The desire to break the sympathy of other Boers in Orange Free State, Natal and cape colony.
- ❖ To share South Africa's mineral wealth equally among the Boers and the British.
- ❖ The need to check on the increasing Indian population in South Africa which was a threat to the whites in the country.
- ❖ The British desire for a federation scheme to clear way for a closer white union of South Africa.
- ❖ To check on the possibility of Boer – German Portuguese alliance against the British.
- ❖ To check on the increasing African nationalism and African resistances.
- ❖ To end the border conflicts between Orange Free State, Transvaal and cape colony.
- ❖ To settle the issue of slavery in all territories in South Africa.
- ❖ To restore the civil and political rights of the Uithlanders which was violated by the Boers.
- ❖ To determine the future politics of South Africa.

A conclusion is required e.g. the reasons for the signing of the 1881 Pretoria convention were political, social and economical in nature.

Qn. B. Describe the silent features / terms of this convention.

INTRODUCTION

- This peace treaty was reached at after the 1881 Boer defeat of the British.
- The terms of this treaty were endorsed in the london convention of 1884.

BODY

- ❖ Transvaal was to have full internal self government.
- ❖ The foreign affairs of Transvaal were to remain under the British control.
- ❖ A British resident was to sit in Pretoria to look after British interests.

- ❖ The civil rights of the Uitlanders were to be protected and they were to participate in government issues.
- ❖ The Uitlanders were to be entitled to citizenship after being residents for five years.
- ❖ The Boers were not to relate with any European powers without the concern of the British.
- ❖ The Boers of Transvaal were to accept the hosting of the British flags and the power of her majesty the Queen of England.
- ❖ The practice of slavery was to be stopped in the Boer territories and any body found practicing it was to be punished heavily.
- ❖ The British were to have limited responsibility to African affairs.
- ❖ The British subjects were to enter Transvaal without any restrictions.
- ❖ The two i.e. the Boers and the British agreed for white closer union in future.
- ❖ The Boers were to stop discriminating against the British goods in Transvaal.
- ❖ The Boers were not to refuse the British goods passing through their territories and vice versa.
- ❖ Transvaal borders were to be redrawn and the internal bickering between the two was to end.
- ❖ The two sides agreed not to over tax each others products.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The terms of the 1881 Pretoria convention were political, economic and social as described above.

C. How did this convention affect the people of south Africa?

INTRODUCTION.

- Its effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ It granted the Boers of Transvaal their internal independence.
- ❖ The Boers remained dissatisfied with some terms of the convention e.g. the British control of the Boer foreign affairs.

- ❖ It led to the creation of alliance of the Boers of Transvaal and Orange Free State to challenge some of the terms of the convention that were negatively affecting the Boers.
- ❖ It led to the Jameson raid of 1895 due to the Boer violation of some terms of the convention e.g. the continued Boer mistreatment of the Uitlanders.
- ❖ It increased the Boer Nationalism in the area because they were not happy with some terms of the convention e.g. the placing of Transvaal foreign affairs in hands of the British etc.
- ❖ It made the Boers to oppose the British federation scheme because they were not willing to lose their independence.
- ❖ It made the Zulu (Africans) lose most of their land to the Boers because the British were not to intervene into African affairs.
- ❖ It increased the popularity of Paul Kruger the president of Transvaal because he was very ready to challenge the British.
- ❖ It some how boosted Trade activities in the area since all trade restrictions were removed.
- ❖ It liberated Africans from slavery which had caused a lot of suffering and misery to them.
- ❖ Both the whites and Africans lost their property in the resultant conflicts e.g. in the Jameson raid of 1895.
- ❖ There was also loss of lives of both Africans and the whites in the resultant wars e.g. in the Jameson raid of 1895.
- ❖ Mechanisms were put in place to protect the rights of the Utilanders.
- ❖ It led to the creation of Boer – German - Portuguese alliances against the British.
- ❖ It made Cecil Rhodes more determined to silence the Boers of Transvaal leading to the Anglo-Boer wars e.g. the Jameson raid of 1895, the second Anglo- Boer war of 1899.

A conclusion is required e.g.

It is therefore difficult to forget that although the Boers won the Battle they benefited less from the convention.

Qn A. Why did Cecil Rhodes conflict with Paul Kruger in 1895?

INTRODUCTION.

- The conflict is famously known as the Jameson raid.
- The chief planner of the raid was Cecil Rhodes the Cape prime minister and it was commanded by Major Dr Jameson against Paul Kruger the Boer president of Transvaal.

BODY.

- ❖ Presence of Cecil Rhodes and Paul Kruger who were war mongers.
- ❖ The Boer defeat of the British in the first Anglo – Boer of 1880 – 1881 made the British to organize a revenge battle hence the Jameson raid.
- ❖ The long-term enmity between the Boers and the British since the British arrival at the Cape.
- ❖ Cecil Rhodes's desire to protect the rights of the Uitlanders.
- ❖ The poor military record of the British e.g. their defeat by the Zulu at the battle of Isandlwana encouraged the Boers to fight them.
- ❖ The British wanted to punish the Boers for refusing a federation scheme.
- ❖ The British desire to share in the mineral wealth i.e. diamond and gold made them to attack the Boers.
- ❖ The role of Chamberlain the British new colonial secretary i.e. he was determined to uphold the British interests wherever they were threatened.
- ❖ The role of Major Dr Jameson who took it upon himself to lead the British troops to Transvaal.
- ❖ The role of Frank Rhodes who was to smuggle fire arms into Transvaal to check on the growing strength of the Boers created panic hence the raid.
- ❖ The increasing number of Uitlanders i.e. $\frac{3}{4}$ of the total population of Transvaal were Uitlanders which threatened the Boers.
- ❖ The increased Boer nationalism especially after the defeat of the British in 1881 annoyed the British leading to the 1895 raid.
- ❖ The continued Boer relationship with the Germans in Namibia and the Portuguese created panic leading to the raid.
- ❖ The violation of the Pretoria convention of 1881 by Paul Kruger e.g. he continued to mistreat the uitlanders.

- ❖ The need by the British to overthrow the government of Paul Kruger.
- ❖ The British refusal of Paul Kruger's request for co-operation in matters relating to tariffs and railways forced Paul Kruger to have a hostile and an isolative policy.
- ❖ It was also a time of scramble and partition of Africa and wars were the means of colonial expansion hence the raid.
- ❖ The Boer continued mistreatment of the uitlanders e.g.
- ❖ Paul Kruger denied them voting rights.
- ❖ Denied them from speaking English in public places.
- ❖ Denied them freedom of movement.
- ❖ Denied them many profitable economic contracts.
- ❖ He increased the voting period from 2- 5- 7 years and finally to 14 annoyed the Uitlanders hence appeal for protection leading to the raid. Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

- The Jameson raid of 1895 was as a result of long term and short term causes.
- The 1895 Jameson raid was intended to liberate the uitlanders who were greatly suffering in the hands of the Boers.

B. why did the conflict fail?

INTRODUCTION.

- The reasons for its failure were political economic and social in nature.

BODY

- ❖ Poor planning and co-ordination by the raiders e.g. Cecil Rhodes planned to attack on 29/12 but cancelled without informing Dr Jameson.
- ❖ Cecil Rhodes lacked support in terms of funds, , personal etc. from the British imperial government.
- ❖ Wrong choice of leadership e.g. Jameson was a doctor he thus lacked leadership skills.
- ❖ The break down of communication between Cecil Rhodes and Dr Jameson also led to their

failure

- ❖ The Boers had a very strong force well trained and equipped with modern weapons
- ❖ The determination of the Boers to safeguard their independence at all costs.
- ❖ The British underestimated the Boer strength, they thus took a few militants which could not match the Boer forces.
- ❖ The uitlanders were business minded thus they were not interested in political power.
- ❖ The popularity of Paul Kruger won him support of the Boers against the British leading to their defeat.
- ❖ The capture of Dr Jameson and the crushing of the rebel uitlanders in Johannesburg led to the failure of the raid.
- ❖ The failure of the British forces to cut off the Pretoria telegraphic wires and instead cut off the Cape wires also led to the failure of the raid.
- ❖ Paul Kruger had also established a strong economy to enable him support a strong resistance.
- ❖ The uitlanders were not united i.e. they divided on origins and social class hence their defeat.
- ❖ Dr Jameson and his men lacked geographical knowledge of the area leading to their defeat.
- ❖ The failure of Cecil Rhodes to convince the Uitlanders to rebel also led to the failure of the raid.
- ❖ The failure of Frank Rhodes to smuggle in the guns frustrated the raiders.
- ❖ Paul Kruger had a very strong spy network which enabled him to get information about the raid before hence preparing accordingly.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The failure of the 1895 Jameson raid was largely due to conflicting interests between Cecil Rhodes and the Uitlanders.

C. what were the effects of this conflict?

INTRODUCTION

- Its effects were both positive and negative

BODY

- ❖ The British forces under Dr Jameson were defeated and humiliated.
- ❖ Paul Kruger became more popular and was re- elected as the president of Transvaal.
- ❖ It led to the outbreak of the second Anglo – Boer war of 1899- 1902 because of the British need for revenge.
- ❖ It ended the political career of Cecil Rhodes as the prime minister of the cape.
- ❖ The British international relations were affected because she was accused of attacking a small innocent Christian country.
- ❖ It resulted into the capture of Dr Jameson by Paul Kruger.
- ❖ It intensified the Transvaal importation of fire arms from German and Portugal.
- ❖ It led to the out break of the Shona – Ndebele rebellion of 1896 – 1897 as the Shona – Ndebere rose up against the defeated British.
- ❖ After the raid Paul Kruger closed all roads and railway lines linking the cape.
- ❖ After the raid the German king Kaiser William II sent a telegram to Kruger congratulating him on defeating the British.
- ❖ It led to the increased mistreatment of the utilanders by Paul Kruger blaming them for supporting the British.
- ❖ It increased Boer nationalism in the area due to their victory over the British.
- ❖ After the raid, sir Robinson was replaced by sir Alfred Milner as the new British high commissioner of the cape.
- ❖ It made the Boers of Orange Free State to promise support to Paul Kruger in any future war against the British.

in conclusion, the Jameson raid worsened the already existing Anglo – Boer rivalries leading to the second Anglo – Boer war.

Qn. A) Explain the causes of the Anglo –Boer war of 1899 -1902.

INTRODUCTION

- This was the second gentleman's war fought between the Boers and the British

- The war was fought to determine the master of south African politics
- The Boers were led by Paul Kruger and the British by Alfred Milner.

BODY

- ❖ The long term enmity between the Boers and the British which began since the British settlement at the cape in 1795.
- ❖ The humiliating defeat of the British in the first Anglo – Boer of 1880 -1881 increases their desire for revenge leading to the second Anglo – Boer war.
- ❖ The increased Boer Nationalism and pride due to continuous successes e.g. in the first Anglo –Boer war of 1880 -1881 and in the Jameson raid of 1895.
- ❖ The British desire to stop the Boer – German alliance which was threatening their interests in south Africa
- ❖ The British defeat by the Zulu at the battle of isandhwana of 1879 gave courage to the Boers arguing that if Africans.
- ❖ The humiliating defeat of the British in the Jameson raid of 1895 increased their desire for revenge leading to the second Anglo – Boer war. .
- ❖ The character and activities of Paul Kruger, he was a war monger.
- ❖ The German congratulatory message to Paul Kruger after the Jameson raid of 1895 excited him leading to the second Anglo – Boer war.
- ❖ The appointment and activities of Alfred Milner as the new British high commissioner in South Africa, he was convinced that the only way to end the Boer threats was simply to fight and defeat them
- ❖ The Boer violation of the Pretoria convention of 1881 e.g. they denied the Uitenhage trial by jury, prevented them from using English in public places etc annoyed the British leading to the second Anglo –Boer war.
- ❖ The Boer refusal to join the federation scheme of the British due to the fear of loosing their independence encouraged the British to fight them.
- ❖ The discovery of minerals i.e diamond and gold increased the British imperial desire to control the mineralized areas leading to the war with the Boers

- ❖ The failure of negotiations between Milner and Poul Kruger over Utilanders made them to fight.
- ❖ The alliance of Transvaal and orange free state plus the promised support from the Boers of the cape colony gave the Boers more determination to fight the British.
- ❖ The continued mistreatment of the utilanders by the Boers e.g. Paul Kruger denied them voting rights, prevented them from speaking English in public palaces, denied them freedom of movement, denied them profitable business contracts etc annoyed the British leading to the second Anglo- Boer war.
- ❖ The collapse of the 1899 Bloemfontein peace take between the British official Milner and Paul Kruger over the issue of Utilanders led to the war.
- ❖ The years between 1899 -1902 were the very period of active European scramble for and partition of Africa thus each party was very determined to control South Africa an area of great mineral endowment hence the war.

A conclusion is required e.g. the second Anglo – Boer war was caused by a number of reasons, but the spark off of the war was the British refusal to answer of removing their troops from the Transvaal boarders within 48 hours.

B. what were the effects of this war?

INTRODUCTION

- Its effects were both positive and negative

BODY

- ❖ The Boers were totally defeated by the British
- ❖ There was massive loss of lives of both Boers the British and Africans e.g. about 200,000 people died leading to depopulation.
- ❖ It led to massive destruction of property e.g. home, farms, animals etc.
- ❖ It taught both the British and the Boers a lesson that war was not an ideal method of conflict resolution.
- ❖ The British paid a war indemnity of 30million pounds to the Boers as reconstruction funds.

- ❖ It ended the political career of Paul Kruger so he fled to Netherlands where he died in 1904.
- ❖ On the other hand it led to the rise of a new generation of democratic Boer leaders e.g. Smuts, Botha, Hertzog.
- ❖ Concentration camps were created for both Boers and Africans but for Africans they were poorly facilitated i.e. no water etc.
- ❖ The Boer states of Orange Free State and Transvaal temporarily lost their independence to the British.
- ❖ It strengthened the Boer unity more than ever before despite their defeat in the war.
- ❖ After the war, the Boers were allowed to stay with their guns for protection against Africans.
- ❖ The British withdrew their support of protecting human rights of the non whites e.g. Africans, Indians and coloreds.
- ❖ There was a decline in agriculture during the course of the war leading to famine.
- ❖ Trade and commerce also declined hence poverty.
- ❖ Africans lost their land to the whites hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ Africans also lost hope of getting back their independence.
- ❖ African mineral workers suffered greatly i.e. they were over exploited by the whites.
- ❖ Africans were disarmed hence weakening them militarily.
- ❖ It also led to apartheid policy of the whites against Africans.
- ❖ Africans also lived in constant fear and insecurity.
- ❖ It boosted African nationalism through the formation of political parties e.g. African National Congress to fight for their rights.
- ❖ It led to the signing of the 1902 Vereeniging peace treaty that ended the war.
- ❖ After the war, the Boers stopped their act of discriminating the British goods passing through their territories.

- ❖ At the end of the war, English and Dutch languages were made official languages.

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion, the second Anglo – Boer war had significant consequences upon the people of South Africa. Some were immediate while others long – term effects.

Qn A. Why was the 1902 Treaty signed?

INTRODUCTION

- This famously known as the Vereeniging treaty.
- It was signed between the Boers and the British to end the second Anglo – Boer war.
- It was held in Vereeniging one of the towns of Transvaal on may 31st 1902.
- The British were represented by Lord Kitchener and the Boers by Smuts, Batha, Herzog, Dewet etc.

BODY

- ❖ It was signed to end the second Anglo –Boer war of 1899- 1902 between the Boers and the British.
- ❖ The need to provide a permanent solution on the issue of the federation scheme.
- ❖ To decide on the issue of the National language on both English and Dutch to be used in South Africa.
- ❖ To decide on the issue of citizenship and voting rights in South Africa.
- ❖ To find a solution of how to put back the economy of South Africa on a sound footing.
- ❖ To devise means and ways of compensation for the war damages resulting from the 1899 - 1902 Anglo –Boer war.
- ❖ To clear way for the making of the draft constitution for South Africa.
- ❖ To find way of having the white control of South African economy.
- ❖ It was also signed to end the hostility and rivalry between the Boers and the British that began in 1795.
- ❖ To confirm the white the white superiority in South Africa i.e. to bring the whole of South Africa

under the white control.

A conclusion is required e.g. The 1902 Vereening Treaty was primarily signed to end the second Anglo- Boer war of 1899- 1902.

Qn. B. Describe the terms of this treaty

INTRODUCTION

- The peace settlement was reached at by the Boers and the British on 31st may 1902 to end the second Anglo – Boer war.
- The signatories were Lord Kitchener on the side of the British. And Smuts, Hertzog, Botha, Dewet etc on the Boer side.
- The terms were on the language, voting power, government among others.

BODY

- ❖ Th Boers were to stop their hostility against the British.
- ❖ The British were to withdraw their troops from Northern Transvaal.
- ❖ The Boers of Orange Free State and Transvaal were to loose their independence but they were promised self government in future.
- ❖ Both the Dutch and English were to be used as official languages in south Africa.
- ❖ The British were to compensate the Boers with about 30 million pounds for reconstruction for the damages during the second Anglo-Boer war.
- ❖ The Boers were to keep with their guns for defense against the Africans.
- ❖ A police force was to be set up to disarm and displine the Africans who either got arms indirectly during the course of the war or might have acquired them illegally.
- ❖ All prisoners of the war were to be released with out any condition.
- ❖ The British were to stop their policy of supporting African rights.
- ❖ The Boers were to accept the hosting of the British flags in their areas.
- ❖ The Boers were to stop their discrimination towards the British goods passing through their territories

- ❖ Voting powers in south Africa were only for the whites male adults and on the basis of one man one vote
- ❖ None of the Boer leaders were to be tried for the war crimes
- ❖ It was agreed that the political destiny of south Africa would remain in the hands of the whites communities
- ❖ The Boers were to keep and run their own schools
- ❖ Swaziland protectorate was to be taken over by the British
- ❖ Concentration camps were to be set up for both Boers and Africans but for the Boers were to be well facilitated with good water, medical facilities etc.

A conclusion is required e.g.

The conclusion, the basic terms of this treaty which were generous to the Boers were intended to protect the rights and position of the whites in south Africa.

D. How did this treaty affect the whites and Africans

INTRODUCTION

Its effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

To the whites

- ❖ The Boer republic of Transvaal and Orange Free State lost their independence to the British but promised self government soon
- ❖ It strengthened the Boers economic position in south Africa since they were given 30 million pounds for the damages of the war by the British
- ❖ After the treaty all taxes were removed hence economic development
- ❖ It facilitated the formation of South African union which was achieved in 1910.
- ❖ It created peace between the Boers and the British hence preventing the occurrence of another major war between the two.
- ❖ It promoted the white languages since English and Dutch were made official languages in

South Africa.

- ❖ It led to the emergence of new progressive Boer leaders E.g. Louis Botha from Transvaal, Hertzog a brilliant lawyer from Orange Free State, Smuts from Cape Colony etc.
- ❖ It boosted Boer nationalism because the treaty had given them almost all their demands and by 1905 they formed political parties' e.g. Het Volk party.
- ❖ It ended the Boer-German –Portuguese alliance which was threatening the British interests in South Africa.
- ❖ The British were taught a lesson, that the Boers were also strong and that force cannot work against them but mutual negotiations.
- ❖ It led to the release of all prisoners of the war with any condition attached.
- ❖ It promoted the supremacy of the whites in South Africa in all aspects of life to e.g. it was only the white adults to vote and to be voted.
- ❖ It promoted equality of the Boers and the British.
- ❖ It ended the political career of Paul Kruger as he was exiled and died in 1904.
- ❖ By the treaty, the Boers lost Swaziland to the British.
- ❖ It laid a foundation for the national convention of 1908 which confirmed the union government in 1910.

To Africans

- ❖ It legalized racial segregation of the whites to Africans.
- ❖ It left Africans insecure and defenseless since they were completely disarmed.
- ❖ It marked a complete erosion of African independence because the political destiny of South Africa was put in the hands of the whites.
- ❖ It led to the growth of African nationalism due to white mistreatments e.g. denying them their voting rights, land grabbing etc. through the formal and political parties e.g. ANC to fight for their rights.
- ❖ Africans lost their land to the whites hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ African languages were completely ignored since English and Dutch languages were made the

official languages in South Africa.

- ❖ It increased Africans military resistances against the whites to fight for their rights e.g. the Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- ❖ Africans who lost their property during the course of the war were not compensated for hence making them poor.
- ❖ It led to the establishment of reserves for the settlement of Africans but they were poorly facilitated i.e. no water, no medical facilities etc.
- ❖ A lot of death occurred among Africans especially in concentration camps due to poor standards of living leading depopulation.
- ❖ The British stopped their policy of protecting interests and rights of Africans hence increased suffering of Africans.
- ❖ Africans lost voting power thus making them second class citizens in their native country.
- ❖ Pass laws against Africans increased thus Africans were made prisoners in their native country.

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion both the British and the Boers benefited from the treaty. However its generally agreed that the Boers gained more and Africans attained too little if there was anything.

A. Why was the national convention called in 1908.

INTRODUCTION

- This was a national meeting mandated to present, discuss and pass a new union constitution in south Africa.
- The meeting took place at Durban in Natal in October 1908 and another session at the cape in November the same year.
- The delegates came from all the four (4) states of Natal, cape, Transvaal and orange free state.
- And the racist Rhodesia sent observers to attend the conventions.

BODY

- ❖ The delegates met to discuss the details of the nature of the proposed union constitution.
- ❖ It was called to clear the political, social, and economic problems hindering the union.
- ❖ To debate on the nature of the political governance that suite south Africa.
- ❖ To discuss and completely agree on the issue of the national language to be used in South Africa.
- ❖ To address the issue of voting rights in south Africa.
- ❖ To prevent the occurrence of another Anglo – Boer war in South Africa.
- ❖ The British need to cut off the increasing Boer nationalism in the area.
- ❖ To discuss and remove all economic barriers, to enable them have free trade area.
- ❖ To pass way for the final reconciliation and unity between the two white communities in South Africa.
- ❖ They met to sort out the inter territory railways and customs differences.
- ❖ The British need to stop the Boer German alliance which was threatening their interests in South Africa.
- ❖ The presence of racial tensions between the two led to the calling of the national convention.

A conclusion is required.

B. How did this convention affect the people of south Africa

INTRODUCTION

- The effects of the national convention on the whites were good and bad on the Africans.

BODY

- ❖ Complete equality of both English and Dutch languages was achieved
- ❖ The union government was headed by the british government.

- ❖ A new constitution for the union was drafted .
- ❖ The union was led by the governor general who was also answerable to the queen of England.
- ❖ Ten (10) ministers were appointed to assist the governor general in the general administration of the union government.
- ❖ It proposed one parliament of all the four republics consisting of two chambers i.e the senate and the house of assembly.
- ❖ It ended the outstanding conflicts between the Boers and British as they agreed to form a union government.
- ❖ The four(4) colonies i.e the Cape, Natal, orange free state and Transvaal were renamed the 4 provinces of the union.
- ❖ It denied African voting rights in their native country.
- ❖ It limited the voting power / rights to only male adult whites.
- ❖ The non whites were blocked from entering the union parliament.
- ❖ One supreme court for the union was set up and the judiciary head quarters based in Bloemfontein.
- ❖ There was removal of railway tariffs which had created enmity between the Boers and the British.
- ❖ It made P-N-Botha to be the first prime minister of the new union.
- ❖ It made Africans completely lose any hope of deciding their political destiny since they were denied voting rights.
- ❖ It set away for the apartheid policies and the mistreatment of Africans.
- ❖ Three (3) capital cities of the union were set up i.e. the legislative capital in Cape, the executive capital in Pretoria, the Judicial capital in Bloemfontain

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion, the 1908 convention benefited the whites because it ended their long standing enmity leading to the formation of the union government in 1910.

Qn. A Explain the factors that favoured the formation of the union in 1910

INTRODUCTION

- This was a constitution under which the four[4] white republics of Transvaal, orange free state, Natal and cape colony came together in 1910 to form a union government
- It started operating on 31st may 1910 with Louis Botha and Smuts as the leaders

BODY

- ❖ The desire to end the long term enmity between the Boers and the British since the British settlement at the cape
- ❖ The impact of 1902 Vereeniging treaty e.g. it brought a closer union between the Boer and British and they agreed to live together in south Africa as one race [white race]
- ❖ The death of strong hardliners i.e. Cecil Rhodes died in march 1901 while Paul Kruger passed away in 1904. these leaders had prevented union for long.
- ❖ The efforts of Selbourne (the British high commissioner to south Africa) he showed the possible benefits of the union and pointed out the dangers white states would face if they continued to exist independently.
- ❖ The need to cut off the Boer - German alliance which was threatening the British interests in South Africa.
- ❖ The need to have a common racial policy against Africans in order to exploit them.
- ❖ The granting of self governments of Transvaal in 1906 and orange free states in 1907 created co-operation between the two, leading to the formation of the union government.
- ❖ The need to control the movement of African migrants into the white states.
- ❖ The need to stop Indian threats who had been brought in south Africa boost the Natal sugar industry who had started demanding for the political rights which the British opposed.
- ❖ The need to lower administrative costs in the white areas by creating one administration.
- ❖ Need to avoid unnecessary competition between the Boers and the British especially in the field of commerce and trade.

- ❖ The British need to have a permanent relationship with the Boers and forget the past.
- ❖ The 1908 national convention paved way for the formation of the union government.
- ❖ The fear of the African growing nationalism which would threaten the white stay in South Africa. Led to the formation of the political union.
- ❖ The formation of the custom union by 1903 led to closer operation between the Boers and the British leading to formation of political union in 1910
- ❖ The British need to check on the ever growing Boer nationalism especially in the Transvaal and the fear that the old hostilities would resume if the whites were not united.
- ❖ The intergration of the railways of cape colony and Orange Free states under one authority created economic cooperation leading to the formation of the union government
- ❖ The need to achieve economic prosperity from the union through creation of large market for their production.

A conclusion is required, e.g.

The factors that favoured the formation of the union 1910 were long term and short term.

B. What were the terms of the union act?

INTRODUCTION

The terms of the union act 1910 were on government, parliament, voting power, language and the high commission territories as described below.

BODY

- ❖ The union was to be headed by the Governor General appointed by the British.
- ❖ The governor general was to receive instructions from the Queen of England.
- ❖ The governor general was to be assisted by 10 ministers.
- ❖ The union parliament was to have two chambers i.e. the senate whose term was to be 10 years and the house of assembly whose term was to be 5 years.
- ❖ There was to be 3 [three] capital Towns of the union to the judicial capital at Bloemfontein, the Legislative at the Cape and the executive capital at Pretoria.

- ❖ The former four states to the cape colony Natal, Transvaal and orange free states were to be renamed the four[4] provinces of the union.
- ❖ Each province was cater for its social services, health, education etc.
- ❖ There was to be one Supreme Court for the whole region with provincial and district courts.
- ❖ Franchise was to be limited to only adult male whites
- ❖ However, in the cape the rich and educated Africans were to vote but elsewhere Africans were not to vote or be voted for.
- ❖ A white missionary was however to be nominated to represent the interests of the Africans.
- ❖ English and Dutch were to be the official languages in South Africa.
- ❖ There was to be a complete equality between the Boers and the British in South Africa.
- ❖ The union government was to include the states of Botswana, Swaziland and Lesotho.
- ❖ Each province was to be governed by an administrator appointed by the union government.
- ❖ Etc.

A conclusion is required.

C. How did it affect the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- The effects of the 1910 South African union were positive on the whites and negative on the Africans.

BODY

- ❖ It ended the long standing enmity between the Boers and the British which began in 1795
- ❖ It laid a foundation for the apartheid policy in South Africa.
- ❖ It made the British and the Boers to dominate the political, social and economic aspects of south Africa.
- ❖ It made English and Dutch the official languages of south Africa at the expense of African languages

- ❖ It reduced the costs of administration in south Africa because there was no more duplication
- ❖ of services e.g The Governor general was the leader of all the four provinces.
- ❖ It led to the increased African Nationalism and the formation of Political parties like A.N.Cto fight for the African rights
- ❖ It led to the growth of slums with all associated evils like prostitution, smoking, etc where Africans lived.
- ❖ South African economy was boosted by the new market and abolition of trade restriction all the four provinces of the union.
- ❖ South African resources especially minerals were fully exploited by the whites
- ❖ There was further railway development that boosted the south African economy i.e different lines were set up to link up these provinces which facilitated Boer maize and wheat production.
- ❖ It confirmed the total loss of African independence because Africans were completely eliminated in the politics
- ❖ Africans lost the British protection over their human and civil rights leading to the increased suffering.
- ❖ Africans were denied voting rights by the union hence losing any hope of deciding their political destiny
- ❖ Africans lost their fertile land to the white because of the 1913 Land act which prevented them from owning land
- ❖ Swaziland, Lethoso and Botswana became high commission territories.
- ❖ It led to the establishment of Bantustans for the Africans which were heavily congested with poor facilities e.g. no water, no medical facilities e.t.c.
- ❖ Africans were disarmed and left defenceless.
- ❖ It denied justice to the Africans in all aspects of life e.g. in courts of law they were to lose cases, given poor education e.t.c.
- ❖ African cultures were undermined.
- ❖ A conclusion is required e.g. in conclusion, therefore, Africans were the victims of this union,

their land was grabbed and were sent in crowded reserves

A conclusion is required.

Qn. D. Explain the factors that have hindered the union up to 1910.

- The factors were both long term and long term.

BODY

- ❖ The long standing enmity between the Boers and the British since the British settlement at the cape in 1795.
- ❖ Disagreement on the nature of the government where as the Boers wanted a unitary system of government, the British on the other hand preferred a federal one.
- ❖ Both were not willing to suffer the financial burden of maintaining a bigger administrative structure in form of a union
- ❖ Presence of hard liners/ radical politicians like Cecil Rhodes, Paul Kruger etc, they were inconsistent, undiplomatic and they always believed in wars.
- ❖ There was disagreement over the official and national language to be used i.e. the Boers wanted Dutch while the British wanted English.
- ❖ There were also conflicts over the location of the capital city but it later resolved and agreed to have 3 capitals i.e. the judicial capital at Bloemfontein, the executive at Pretoria and the legislative at the cape.
- ❖ The disagreement on the nature of franchise (voting) where as the Boers wanted the non whites not to vote or be voted for, the liberal British at the cape wanted them vote and voted for hence a hindrance factor.
- ❖ The role of Cecil Rhodes, Dr Jameson who wanted to paint the whole of south Africa red alarmed the Boers thus un willing to unit with the British
- ❖ The economic differences between the Boers and the British. i.e the Boer provinces were economically well off compared to those of the British thus unwilling to join.
- ❖ The British discrimination of the Boers in the debate on the union in London
- ❖ The Kacte award treaty which stole the Boer diamond fields killed the Anglo – Boer relationship hence hindering the union.
- ❖ The increasing Boer Nationalism i.e. the Boers greatly loved their independence, culture etc. thus they could not easily be convinced to join the union.
- ❖ At first the British colonial government never supported the federation.

- ❖ The wars between the Africans especially Mosheshe and the Boers diverted the attention of the Boers away from federation.
- ❖ The British leaders who championed the earlier union attempts like Carnavan were arrogant hence affecting the union

A conclusion is required.

Qn. A. What were the aims of apartheid?

INTRODUCTION

- Apartheid was a Boer word to mean racial segregation or discrimination over the Africans.
- It also meant racial segregation based on white domination over the Africans.
- It was the Boers favourite political policy since the days of the Great Trek.
- It had its roots in the act of union 1910 although it was officially passed in 1948 during the regime of Dr Daniel Malan.
- It advocated for separate developments of the whites and African territories in south Africa.
- It had several harsh laws called Acts which limited African rights and freedoms.

BODY

- ❖ To stop the majority Africans from ruling their own country.
- ❖ To confirm white rule and domination in South Africa.
- ❖ To reduce on the nationalistic feeling among Africans by dividing them.
- ❖ The whites wanted to preserve their culture and superiority.
- ❖ The whites wanted to divide and rule Africans permanently.
- ❖ To avoid competition for jobs between the whites and the non whites.
- ❖ To keep Africans as suppliers of cheap labour on white established farms, mines and factories.
- ❖ To ensure that Africans remain back ward and underdeveloped.
- ❖ To fully exploit the economic resources of South Africa i.e. minerals and land.
- ❖ It was also aimed at reducing the movement of Africans in Towns.
- ❖ It was developed on the Boer arrogance and national pride i.e. they believed that they were a God chosen race and born lucky so they had to develop separately.
- ❖ It was aimed at removing voting rights from the blacks.
- ❖ To provide Africans with poor social services like education, health etc.
- ❖ To serve as the basis of all activities in south Africa.
- ❖ To shift blame and pretend that Africans had their self rule etc.

A conclusion is required e.g.

In conclusion, the major aims of apartheid policy were to confirm white rule and domination in South

Africa and to exploit the economic resources of the country.

Qn. B. How was it applied in south Africa between 1948-1994

INTRODUCTION.

- Apartheid became a policy of administration in 1948 during the regime of Dr Daniel Malan
- The apartheid regime ruled south Africa between 1948 until it's collapse in 1994
- During apartheid regime Africans were denied their rights and freedom thus they were made second class citizens in their native country
- The policy was applied in education, employment, land ownership, marriage, government etc.

BODY

APARTHEID IN EDUCATION

- ❖ Africans received education which prepared them for inferior positions in the society
- ❖ Africans received mainly agricultural lessons to enable them produce what to eat
- ❖ The 1953 education act dictated that Africans were to learn in their local languages \
- ❖ Africans were not to study professional courses e.g. law accountancy etc
- ❖ African education was to focus on tribal issues rather than national issues
- ❖ Africans lacked scholastics materials and they studied under poor conditions
- ❖ In 1959, the university act expelled Africans from white universities leading to creation of tribal universities e.g. the Xhosa in Fort Hare, Zulu to Ngoye etc
- ❖ The Bantu education was removed from missionary control and high education for Africans in towns was stopped
- ❖ The government decided what to teach, who to teach and what purpose and when to teach.
- ❖ Africans were taught by inferior teachers who were not qualified
- ❖ African education was not financially supported by the government

APARTHEID IN EMPLOYMENT

- ❖ All paid and skilled employments were reserved for the whites only
- ❖ Africans were to provide unskilled labour like diggers of numerals, drawers of water etc
- ❖ Africans were given slave wages for their heavy work and others not paid at all
- ❖ The 1911, mines and workers act prevented African workers as professionals
- ❖ In 1937, the government industrial act denied Africans membership in any registered trade union
- ❖ The native builders workers act also discouraged the employment of Africans as skilled workers in towns
- ❖ African workers lacked job security thus they could be fired at any time

APARTHIED IN LAND

- ❖ By 1913 , land was divided into two i.e for the whites and Africans
- ❖ The land act of 1913 gave the whites 87% of the productive land and 13% of the unproductive land to the Africans
- ❖ Africans were not allowed to stay in urban areas unless otherwise
- ❖ The group area act of 1959 , created homes (Bantu stans) for Africans but they were poorly facilitated i.e. no water , no medicine facilities etc
- ❖ The Asians and coloreds who had shops and property in Europeans areas were prohibited from using them
- ❖ Africans had to get permissions to move out side their villages and were not to stay out more than 3 days

SOCIAL LAWS

- ❖ The marriage act prohibited any form of marriage between the whites and Africans
- ❖ Physical sexual intercourse between the non whites and the whites was forbidden and punishable in South Africa
- ❖ Africans were not to use the same hospitals , roads, bridges , etc with the whites
- ❖ They restricted free movement of Africans ie they had to get permissions from their local labour offices
- ❖ All female and male Africans aged 16 were to carry identity cards (pass books) containing all the personal details

POLITICAL LAWS

- ❖ The public safety act gave power to the government to declare a state of emergency up to a year
- ❖ The police was given powers to arrest suspects with out trail e.g Nelson Mandela , Albert Luthuli etc
- ❖ The state was given liberty to forbid any African organization from getting foreign funds
- ❖ Freedom of the press was restricted as black newspapers like “the world” was banned
- ❖ There was banning of political gathering and freedom of association was limited.
- ❖ Political parties were also banned ie A.N.C(African National Congress) , P.A.C (Pan African Congress)
- ❖ The prisons act of 1959 made it illegal to report prison conditions and for prisoners to communicate with any one
- ❖ Africans had no political say in the government ie they were not to vote and be voted for

- ❖ In 1936 , the native representative act dictated that Africans had to vote separately only in their Bantustans
- ❖ The act also removed Africans from the cape native voters roll
- ❖ The act also allowed Africans through out the country (south Africa) to elect 4 (four) Europeans to represent them in the senate.
- ❖ Even the coloreds were placed on a separate voter's roll off from a common voters roll.
- ❖ Etc.

A conclusion is required.

D. What were the effects thus policy on the Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- Generally apartheid policy affected Africans negatively.

BODY

- ❖ Africans lost their independence to the whites
- ❖ Africans lost 87% of their productive land to the whites by the land act of 1913
- ❖ Having lost their land , most of the young Africans left their homes to urban and mines for jobs
- ❖ Africans who worked in the mines were under paid yet they over worked
- ❖ Africans who protested against poor pay lost their jobs to migrate labour from Malawi and Mozambique
- ❖ African lost lives in the process of demanding for rights e.g. at Sharpeville 62 died and over 220 died during Kadalie's strikes
- ❖ It led to the banning of African political parties e.g. ANC , PAC etc
- ❖ African nationalist who exposed the policy were arrested and imprisoned with out trail e.g. Nelson Mandela
- ❖ Africans lived in a state of fear and mistreat because their homes could be searched by the police men
- ❖ It led to violent strikes and demonstrations in South Africa against apartheid e.g. the Sharpeville protest, the Soweto etc.
- ❖ Many Africans were forced into exile i.e. to America and in African countries e.g. Oliver Tambo
- ❖ Africa movements were restricted moving prisoners in their native country
- ❖ It led to the creation of Bantustans where African conditions of living w3ere very poor i.e. they lacked water , medical facilities etc

- ❖ Africans became the second class citizens with very poor social facilities like poor schools etc
- ❖ It led to the massive misery and suffering of the Africans for many years
- ❖ There un employment among the Africans since most productive jobs were given to the whites
- ❖ It led to the decline of the Africa culture especially in Bantustans e.g. Africans began prostitution etc.
- ❖ It also led to the break down of African family ties as men were forced to seek for contract labour on white farms.
- ❖ Africans were divided along tribal lines causing disunity and tribal discrimination.
- ❖ There was destruction of property such as homes, farms in the conflicts between Africans and the whites e.g. in the Sharpsville strikes.
- ❖ It boosted African nationalism and demand for the majority rule in South Africa through the formation of political parties like A.N.C to fight for their rights.
- ❖ It also led to the rise of African nationalists E.g. Nelson Mandela, Albert Luthuli, Steve Bik etc. to fight for African rights etc.

A conclusion is required e.g

The effects of apartheid policy on Africans were both political, social and economic in nature and they were both immediate and long term effects.

Effects of apartheid on the whites

- ❖ The whites dominated the politics of south Africa up to 1994
- ❖ The whites took 87% of the African productive land.
- ❖ They got all skilled and semi skilled jobs in south Africa
- ❖ The whites acquired cheap labour on their established farms.
- ❖ The whites were able to dominate big profitable business in south Africa hence becoming very rich compared to Africans for along period of time.
- ❖ The whites became the first class citizens with first class resources e.g good hospitals, schools etc.
- ❖ The whites were able to exploit the economic wealth of the country especially minerals.
- ❖ The whites became more hated because of their mistreatment of the Africans.
- ❖ It also boosted the white nationalism in South Africa. Etc.

Qn. A. How did the Africans react to the apartheid policy?

INTRODUCTION

- Where as some Africans e.g. the Inkhaha freedom party allied with the apartheid regime, the

majority resisted.

- Those who resisted include the A.N.C leaders such as Nelson Mandela, Walter Sisulu etc and those of pan Africa congress (P.A.C) under Robert Sobukwe.
- The most profound methods include;

BODY

- ❖ Africans started by establishing the South African Native congress in 1912 which was later renamed A. N. C in 1935 to fight for African rights.
- ❖ Africans boycotted commodities produced by the whites e.g. the potato boy cot.
- ❖ A.N. C organized campaigns for the non whites against apartheid laws and the coloureds, Indians were mobilized for this cause.
- ❖ Africans also formed pan African congress in 1959 led by Robert sebukwe to challenge apartheid.
- ❖ Africans involved in strikes against the apartheid policy e.g. the 9th august 1987 mine strike which lasted for 3 (three) weeks.
- ❖ South African musicians, artists used songs and plays against apartheid e.g. Lucky Dube with songs like Different colour one people etc.
- ❖ Some Africans joined military training in countries like Tanzania, Cuba Angola and in return trained others against apartheid regime.
- ❖ Africans formed trade unions to enforce unity against the apartheid regime.
- ❖ Africans also started making petitions, appeals to the regime to reduce the apartheid laws.
- ❖ Religious leaders e.g. Bishop Desmond Tutu always condemned the activities of the whites against Africans
- ❖ Some Africans writers published books on evils of the whites in south Africa to win international sympathy.
- ❖ In 1957, there were peasant uprisings organized in Northern Transvaal against apartheid laws
- ❖ More uprisings also occurred against apartheid laws e.g the Soweto up rising of 1976.
- ❖ Africans led by Albert Lithuli organized a bus boy cott which was intended to reduce on the bus fares.

IN conclusion, Africans used both violent and non violent methods in the fight against apartheid regime.

Qn. A. Why was the African National congress (A.N.C) formed in 1912?

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ It was the largest and best known national movement in South Africa.

- ❖ It was formed in 1912 as the South African native congress.
- ❖ Later in 1935, it was renamed African National Congress.

BODY

- ❖ It was formed to act as one voice of the Africans against the oppression of the whites.
- ❖ To fight for the independence of South Africa under the majority rule.
- ❖ It was formed to mobilize Africans and make them political aware.
- ❖ The desire to destroy apartheid that had made African second class citizen in their native country.
- ❖ It was formed to encourage mutual understanding among various groups of people in South Africa.
- ❖ It was also formed to destroy the political monopoly of the white nationalist party in South Africa.
- ❖ To fight for the economic equality of all races in South Africa.
- ❖ It was formed to fight against the white enslavement of Africans in their native country.
- ❖ The inspiration from the Ethiopians i.e. "African for Africans".
- ❖ The role of western education which made Africans arrogant and aware for their rights

Qn. B. Describes its role in the liberation struggle of South Africa.

- The role of A.N.C was political, military, economic and social and they were both internal and external.

BODY

- ❖ A.N.C Mobilized masses in the fight against apartheid regime including the rural peasants.
- ❖ It managed to get funds from donors which helped to increase her activities against the apartheid regime.
- ❖ A.N.C organized scholarships for the youth to study from abroad e.g. in Uganda, Iraq e.t.c and in return, they mobilized others to fight for their independence.
- ❖ A.N.C managed to get arms and training facilities from Africans and Europeans in the struggle against apartheid regime
- ❖ A.N.C encouraged the blacks to boy cot white products to weaken them economically e.g. the Potato boy cot.
- ❖ It encouraged the organization of African union to put an economic embargo on the Whites in South Africa to weaken them economically.
- ❖ A.N.C called for support from international organizations like United Nations, common wealth etc to fight against apartheid regime in south Africa

- ❖ It showed the whole world that apartheid regime could not be changed constitutionally since the whites were violent.
- ❖ A.N.C campaigned for the release of all political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandela was released in 1989 and by 1994 became the elected president of South Africa with 64% votes.
- ❖ A.N.C sent a delegation to the peace conference in Versailles and to the Pan African congress which helped South Africa to get their independence in 1994
- ❖ It encouraged all Africans to resist pass laws in public's places.
- ❖ A.N.C formed the youth league in 1943 which strongly resisted apartheid laws.
- ❖ It also formed the Umkonto-Wesizwe [the spear of the nation] which acted as the military wing of A.N.C and carried out bombing and military sabotage.
- ❖ A.N.C organized underground movements to continue with the struggle when political parties were abolished.
- ❖ Through its philosophy of non-violence A.N.C staged up peaceful strikes and non-cooperation against the whites. E.g. the mine workers strikes.
- ❖ A.N.C joined with the Indian congress in 1945 to strengthen its appeal.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. C. What were the problems faced by A.N.C in the struggle against apartheid regime?

INTRODUCTION

- A.N.C faced a number of problems and they were political, economic and social in nature.

BODY

- ❖ A.N.C lacked enough funds since the majority of the Africans were very poor hence weakening its activities.
- ❖ A.N.C leaders were arrested and imprisoned e.g. Albert Luthuli
- ❖ The leaders of A.N.C remained disunited along tribal lines thus they could not come together to fight against apartheid regime.
- ❖ There was shortage of fire arms to fight apartheid regime yet the only language understood was violence
- ❖ Some African governments openly supported the racist regime e.g. Malawi and Zaire

- ❖ Some extremists of A.N.C murdered civilians which discredited it internationally.
- ❖ Some leaders of A.N.C were forced in for exile e.g. Oliver Tambo which affected its activities.
- ❖ Some western powers like U.S.A and Canada supported the racist government financially and militarily.
- ❖ A.N.C also lacked grass roots support before 1945 because of the general fear among the Africans.
- ❖ The racist government put a lot of restrictions on the operation of A.N.C through pass laws.
- ❖ Absence of strong leaders especially before 1945 which retarded its dreams of fighting apartheid regime.
- ❖ There was disagreement on the approach to use e.g. the youth preferred force which the elders wanted peaceful means.
- ❖ Many people were killed by the racist government whenever they rebelled against the racist policies.
- ❖ Majority of the members of A.N.C Were illiterate and poor which made its efforts weak.

A conclusion is required e.g.

in conclusion A.N.C faced both internal and external problems.

Qn. A. Why were the Bantustans established in South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- These were homelands or reserves set up by the whites for the settlement of the Africans.
- They were isolated homelands for the Africans to enable them carryout their social activities and local politics without interfering with the developments of the Whites.
- The policy was highly supported by Dr. H.F. Verwoerd
- Examples of Bantustans included; Transkei and Ciskei for the Xhosa, Gazankulu for the Tsonga, Kwazulu for the Zulu, Ndebele for the Ndebele people etc.

BODY

- ❖ They were established to promote racism and separate developments of the Whites and Africans in South Africa.
- ❖ To prevent the growth of African nationalism by limiting the association of the blacks.

- ❖ To ease defence against the Africans who were hostile to the Whites e.g. the Zulu, Xhosa, etc.
- ❖ To provide permanent labour supply for the whites in mines, industries and on plantations.
- ❖ The need to eliminate competition for jobs between the whites and the Africans.
- ❖ The need to limit free movement of Africans around the streets of the Towns.
- ❖ To enable the minority whites to enjoy and retain the mineral wealth of the country.
- ❖ To prevent Africans from the destructions that they had undertaken e.g. destruction of schools, roads, etc in the fight against apartheid.
- ❖ To ensure modern enslavement of the Africans by the whites.
- ❖ To provide Africans with poor social services.
- ❖ The need by the whites to isolate Africans from participation in the nation politics of South Africa.
- ❖ To convince the European powers that Africans were having self independence.
- ❖ To divide and rule the Africans permanently.
- ❖ To implement the terms of the 1910 constitution of the whites.
- ❖ To ensure that Africans do not own land and other important resources in South Africa.

In conclusion, the reasons for the establishment of the Bantustans were political, social and economic in nature.

B) What were the results of these Bantustans on the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- The results were both positive and negative

BODY

- ❖ Forced labour policies on Africans on European farms, mines and industries increased.
- ❖ They created disunity among Africans because they were established along tribal lines.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their cattle in reserves because of tsetse flies.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their productive land to the whites hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ Africans lost their voting rights as they were denied to vote and be voted.
- ❖ Political powers of the Africans were restricted within the Bantustans.
- ❖ Africans suffered a lot in reserves because of poor sanitation, poor housing facilities,

inadequate water supply etc.

- ❖ Africans were weakened militarily because they were kept so much separate from the whites.
- ❖ The policy led to moral decay among Africans as they began evil practices e.g. homosexuality, prostitution, smoking etc.
- ❖ Some Africans who tried to resist the policy were arrested and imprisoned e.g. Nelson Mandela Desmond Tutu etc.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their lives in the process of demanding for their rights.
- ❖ There was over exploitation of the country's resources especially gold by whites.
- ❖ Africans lost their political rights to the white minority in their country.
- ❖ There was unemployment among Africans since most of productive jobs were given the whites.
- ❖ The policy led to growth of African nationalism with great nationalists like Nelson Mandela, Oliver Thambo etc. to fight for African rights.
- ❖ The policy increased the racial segregation basing on colour.
- ❖ It led to the growth of slums for the poor Africans with their negative impacts like high crime rates etc. e.g. SOWETO.
- ❖ The policy laid a foundation for later uprisings in South Africa e.g the Sharpville massacre in 1960 and Soweto uprising of 1976.
- ❖ The policy led to the formation of political parties in south Africa e.g A.N.C, P.A.C etc. to fight for African rights

To the whites

- ❖ The whites became more hated by the Africans because of the torture and imprisonment of the innocent Africans.
- ❖ The security of the whites greatly improved because Africans could not access towns freely.
- ❖ The whites enjoyed their freedom and liberty without interference from the Africans.
- ❖ The whites were able to get cheap labour since Africans were confined in reserves.
- ❖ The whites dominated the political rights of Africans.
- ❖ The whites took most of the productive land of the Africans.
- ❖ The policy increased white nationalism in the country (South Africa)

- ❖ The whites became more wealth due to the over exploitation the country's mineral resources.

Generally the results of the Bantustan policy were negative on the Africans and positive on the Whites.

Qn. A. Why was the organisation of African Unity (O.A.U) formed?

INTRODUCTION

- O.A.U was formed on 25th may 1963 at Addisababa the city of Ethiopia which later became its permanent headquarters.
- It was formed by thirty two heads of Africans governments and these included; Nkwame Nkruma of Ghana, Col. Abdul Gamel Nasser of Egypt, Jomo Kinyatta of Kenya, Julius Nyerere of Tanzania, Heille Sellasre of Ethiopia, Milton Obote of Uganda etc.

BODY

- ❖ It was formed to promote solidarity and unity among African states.
- ❖ To end all forms of colonialism in Africa.
- ❖ To provide Africans states with a permanent organistion to help them discuss their issues regularly and get practical solutions to them.
- ❖ To promote economic intergration among member states for a wider market.
- ❖ To help in the defence of the independence African states.
- ❖ To cooperate with other peace loving international bodies e.g. U.N.O in the fight for peace, harmony and freedom.
- ❖ To protect the rights of all the oppressed on the continent in line with the declaration of the universal human rights charter of U.N.O.
- ❖ To improve the living standards and conditions of the Africans as a group and individual.
- ❖ To promote science and technology in Africa.
- ❖ To promote cooperation among African states in social, cultural, political and in economic fields.
- ❖ To end apartheid and racism in South Africa and racist Rhodesia.
- ❖ Etc.

Conclusively O.A.U the reasons for the formation of O.A.U were political social and economic in nature.

Qn. B). Explain its role in the fight against apartheid in South Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- Its roles were political, social economic and military in nature.

BODY

- ❖ It requested the member states to contribute a certain percentage of their national income to help in the fight against apartheid.
- ❖ O.A.U organized conferences to find ways on how to deal with the racist government and get support against apartheid e.g in Tanga, Kampala etc.
- ❖ O.A.U isolated nay member state that was suspected of operating with the apartheid government of South Africa. E.g. Zaire under Mubuku Seseku.
- ❖ O.A.U imposed economic sanctions on South Africa as away of weakening the racist government economically.
- ❖ O.A.U requested member states t accommodate Africans that were oppressed by the racist government.
- ❖ O.A.U persuaded European powers not to sell any arms to the racist government in order to weaken it militarily.
- ❖ It persuaded member states to deny travel documents to their citizens wishing to travel to South Africa.
- ❖ O.A.U provided A.N.C guerillas with logistics i.e. food, arms etc in the fight against the racist government.
- ❖ Formed a committee of a liberation based in Tanzania whose duty was to liberate South Africa from apartheid.
- ❖ O.A.U issued the Mogadishu declaration of 1971 and Dar- el- salaam declaration of 1975 to end racism in South Africa.
- ❖ O.A.U forced the racist government to effect political reforms by freeing political parties.
- ❖ The member states of O.A.U agreed to pressurize the racist government to release all political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandel, Albert Sobukwe, etc.
- ❖ Member states of O.A.U boycotted the Olympics against Newziland and South Africa's participation in 1976.
- ❖ Through the efforts of O.A.U, Cuba was convinced to send troops to the neighboring country Namibia in the efforts against apartheid government.
- ❖ Member states of O.A.U e.g. Tanzania, Zambia, gave in military support in the fight against apartheid regime.

- ❖ O.A.U convinced Europe that apartheid could not be changed peacefully.
- ❖ O.A.U provided scholarships to South Africans who later led the struggle for their independence
- ❖ It acted as the mouth piece for the voiceless Africans. i.e spoke violently against the racist government.
- ❖ O.A.U decampaigned un popular laws of the racist government like Bantustans, employment laws etc.
- ❖ It called for solidarity and unity among the A.N.C fighters

A conclusion is required. Eg

- O.A.U played both internal and external roles in the struggle against the apartheid regime.

Qn. C. What problems did O.A.U face in its struggle against apartheid?

INTRODUCTION

- O.A.U faced both internal and external problems

BODY

- ❖ Some Africans states continued to support the apartheid policy e.g. Malawi, Zaire.
- ❖ On international scan, some big powers like Britain, France continued strongly supporting South Africa.
- ❖ The U.N Security Council took so long to effect the armies embargo on South Africa.
- ❖ The apartheid policy government had a modern, stronger and efficient army that could not be earlier fought by O.A.U.
- ❖ The apartheid government also had a strong economy compared to other African countries thus economic embargo could not weaken it.
- ❖ Member states were divided along regions, political and ethnic lines thus could not come together.
- ❖ Member states refused to accept the refugees of apartheid in their countries because of poor economics.
- ❖ The cold war policies which divided the continent into two blocks i.e the capitalists and the communists. Hence disunity.
- ❖ O.A.U did not have any army of its own to fight against the racial government.

- ❖ Some member state had international problems e.g. civil wars thus they could not get time that fully fought the racial government e.g. Sudan. Somalia etc
- ❖ Some member states had conflicts among themselves e.g. Uganda and Tanzania which made the struggle against apartheid difficult.
- ❖ South Africa repeatedly invaded the frontline states and weakened them e.g. Lesotho, Swaziland, etc.
- ❖ Frontline states like Angola, Mozambique, etc had their internal problems supported by racial government e.g. UNITA, FRELIMO.
- ❖ Arrests and imprisonment of political leaders without trials e.g. Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ South Africa also killed her great opponent both within and outside e.g. Biko, Samora Micheal.
- ❖ **Etc**

A conclusion is required e.g. in conclusion O.A.U faced political, social, military and economical problems.

Qn. A. Why was the PAC (Pan African Congress) formed in 1959?

INTRODUCTION.

- PAC was formed in April 1959 as a block away faction from the A.N.C (African National Congress).
- It was formed by young African nationalist leaders like Madzunya, Leballo, Pothlako and Robert Sobukwe.
- They were inspired with Ghandism non wolence approach to achieve independence.
- The first president of PAC was Robert Mangawso Sobukwe.

BODY

- ❖ It was formed to defend and achieve the civil rights of Africans.
- ❖ To provide a national wide organization to mobilize Africans against racial discrimination.
- ❖ To oppose the pass laws and their effects which had reduced Africans to a second class citizen.
- ❖ To oppose the inferior type of education given to Africans that made them backward.
- ❖ to oppose the conservative leadership of Dr, Verwoerd.
- ❖ To oppose the Bantustan policy had isolated Africans from the rest of the country.
- ❖ To fight for the liberty and freedom of Africans.

- ❖ It was formed to act as the mouth piece for the voiceless Africans
- ❖ To fight against the white enslavement of Africans.
- ❖ The need to totally eradicate apartheid in South Africa.
- ❖ Inspiration from the Ethiopianism to let Africa be for the Africans
- ❖ The role of western education which made Africans arrogant and aware of their rights.
- ❖ The role of U.N.O which supported the principle of self determination of all nations in the world.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. B). Explain the role of P.A.C in the liberation of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- Its roles were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ It adopted a much more militant approach which speeded up the pace for freedom.
- ❖ PAC allied with ANC and led anti – pass campaigns of 1960 on Sharpville.
- ❖ Its leader Robert Sobukwe was arrested and imprisoned which hardened the spirits for political change in South Africa.
- ❖ it attracted international criticism from U.S.A, UK and UN to oppose the racist government.
- ❖ PAC called for release of political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandela who strongly fought for South Africa independence and in 1994, he became the first elected president of South Africa.
- ❖ Its leadership gave in their lives for the sake of freedom and liberty for all.
- ❖ PAC formed a military wing called POQO to carry out sabotage government programmes.
- ❖ It encouraged the industrial workers to refuse to work that disrupted industrial output.
- ❖ It greatly opposed apartheid laws e.g. creation of Bantustans, poor education policy et.
- ❖ PAC strongly demanded for purely African leadership.
- ❖ P.A.C organized strikes in Pondland and Transvaal demanding for social, political and economic reforms.
- ❖ Its leadership organized encouraged to get congest the prisons, by handing themselves into the nearest police posts.

- ❖ Its leadership organized the march on the Cape town test protest outside the parliament.
- ❖ It also acquired weapons to use in the struggle against the racist government.
- ❖ Its opposition to the A.N.C elitist approach made the made it re- organize itself in the struggle against the racist government.
- ❖ Its activities made South Africa ungovernable for the whites.
- ❖ Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g. In conclusion, PAC played a leading role in the liberation of the liberation of South Africa, however in 1978 its 1st leader Sobukwe died and in 1986, his party also followed him after the death of other leaders i.e Pothlako, Leballo etc.

Qn. A) Why was UMKHOTO WESIZWE formed?

INTRODUCTION.

- It was also known as the “the spear of the nation”
- Formed in June 1960 but it was launched on 16th/12/1961 with its headquarters at Rivonia in Johannesburg.
- It was founded by Nelson Mandela and other ANC militants.

BODY

- ❖ To act as a mouth piece for the voiceless people
- ❖ To totally eradicate apartheid in South Africa.
- ❖ To fight arbitrary arrest and imprisonment of the key leaders.
- ❖ To fight for civil and political rights for all
- ❖ To unite Africans for a common cause.
- ❖ To carry out sabotage activities.
- ❖ To seek for recognition from international bodies like U.N.O
- ❖ To demand for meaningful political change in South Africa.
- ❖ To avoid loss of human life.
- ❖ To counteract with the white brutality.

Qn. B) Explain its role in the fight against apartheid in South Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ Its roles were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ It carried numerous bombings of civilian, military and industrial centers which showed and convinced South Africans that A.N.C was a very serious Nationalist movement e.g. Bombed the Natal town, the bombing of a bar in Durban which left three people dead and over 70 injured.
- ❖ Pressurized the apartheid government to relax its racist laws/policies.
- ❖ Campaigned for freedom, democracy, peace and unity of all South Africans.
- ❖ Convinced friendly communist countries like Cuba to train her youth in guerilla warfare.
- ❖ Convinced other frontline states like Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia etc to extend all types of help towards freedom fighters.
- ❖ Attracted support from A.O.U liberation committee to fight freedom.
- ❖ Convinced other international organization like Nonaligned movement, Arab league to help the struggle.
- ❖ Attacked inhuman apartheid policies like Bantustans, poor education etc.
- ❖ Demand for the release of all political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ Inspired musicians like prince Far and Authors like M.K Asante to publicize African suffering and popularize the struggle.
- ❖ It was responsible for violent strikes e.g. the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- ❖ Convinced other freedom movement such as FREELIMO in Mozambique, MPOLA in Angola etc to ally and fight colonialism together with it.
- ❖ Mobilized mass support towards the independence struggle.
- ❖ Convinced many U.N.O members not to see "MK" as terrorists but as freedom fighters.
- ❖ Convinced western powers i.e. U.S.A and U.K to withdraw their support from apartheid.
- ❖ Provided military skills to the A.N.C fighters
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, Umkhoto Wesizwe played both internal and external roles in the struggle

against the apartheid regime.

Qn. A. Explain the role of the following in the fight against apartheid.

a) Frontline states

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ These were countries that risked their independence and wealth to face the apartheid regime on the side of the African Freedom fighters like A.N.C.

These included Uganda, Zambia, Mozambique, Tanzania, etc with their headquarters in Dar-es-salaam and Julius Nyerere was a key leader. **BODY.**

- ❖ Provided money and other logistics i.e. food, medicine, etc. to freedom fighters like A.N.C in their
- ❖ struggle against apartheid.
- ❖ Provided training grounds to South African guerillas e.g. in Uganda, Mozambique, Tanzania, etc.
- ❖ Strongly supported the view that only violence could change South Africa.
- ❖ Convinced U.N.O to put sanctions/embargo on South Africa to weaken her economically.
- ❖ Allowed many refugees from South Africa in their countries and gave them food, medical, and education etc.
- ❖ Convinced other international bodies i.e. the Non aligned movement, Arab league to help them in the struggle.
- ❖ Held many conferences to lay strategies for the struggle in various cities e.g. Kampala, Tanga, Dar-es-salaam etc.
- ❖ Campaigned against unpopular laws like Bantustans, educational laws etc.
- ❖ Convinced other African countries to stop their citizens from traveling to and from South Africa.
- ❖ Inspired the freedom fighters to be more determined and courageous in the fight for their independence.
- ❖ Convinced neighboring countries especially South African Development and Coordination Conference (SADACC) members not to trade with South Africa to weaken her economically.
- ❖ Convinced O.A.U to form a liberation committee and gave all forms of support to freedom fighters.
- ❖ In 1970, Kaunda a frontline president led a delegation to Western European Capitals to discourage them selling arms to the apartheid government.

- ❖ Always tabled African problems in the U.N.O meetings.
- ❖ Demanded for the release of prisoners like Nelson Mandela who later spearheaded the struggle for the countries independence.
- ❖ Offered supply routes for the personnel and weapons especially through port Maputo in Mozambique.
- ❖ Called for solidarity and togetherness among the A.N.C
- ❖ Etc

In conclusion Frontline states played political, social, and economic role in the struggle against apartheid regime.

Qn. B) U.N.O

INTRODUCTION.

- ❖ It was formed in 1945 after the second world war and it came into being in the American city of San Francisco
- ❖ It replaced the disgraced league of Nations with the major aims of keeping world peace.

BODY.

- ❖ She advocated for equality for all people
- ❖ U.N.O gave moral and financial support to freedom fighters against apartheid regime.
- ❖ U.N.O imposed an economic embargo on South Africa to weaken her economically.
- ❖ Allowed A.N.C members to come and address U.N.O members and mobilize help from them.
- ❖ Campaigned for the release of political prisoners like Nelson Mandela who later spearheaded the struggle for south African independence.
- ❖ U.N.O imposed travel sanctions i.e. no plane was to fly to South Africa.
- ❖ Banned South Africa from all its organs e.g. World Bank, UNESCO, WHO etc.
- ❖ U.N.O supported activities of the frontline states and created a trust fund which provided humanitarian assistance e.g. food.
- ❖ Its court of justice always criticized South Africa for all its excesses on the innocent Africans.
- ❖ It organized elections for all races in South Africa and sent observers in 1994 elections.
- ❖ Recognized nationalists e.g. Nelson Mandela as freedom fighters but not as terrorist as Americans described them.

- ❖ U.N.O called for respect of human rights and self determination of all people.
- ❖ U.N.O put pressure on the racial government to cause change.
- ❖ U.N.O encouraged member states to house and train A.N.C guerillas.
- ❖ Encouraged member states to welcome refugees from South Africa and give them food, medical etc.
- ❖ Isolated South Africa especially in sports e.g. banned South Africa from Olympic Games.

In conclusion, U.N.O's roles in the struggle against apartheid were political, social and economic in nature.

Qn. A) Explain the causes of the Sharpeville campaign of 1960.

INTRODUCTION.

- This incident is widely known as the Sharpeville massacre.
- It occurred during the apartheid regime under Dr. Verwoerd, in the black township of Sharpeville
- It occurred on Monday 21st March 1960.

BODY

- ❖ The killing of over 60 innocent Africans by the panicky policemen.
- ❖ The role of LT Col. Piennar and Major Van Zyl who led Sharpeville police station and supported the shooting of Africans protesters.
- ❖ The character of Africans protesters i.e. they threw stones at Lt.Col. Piennar's car which engaged the police.
- ❖ The limiting of Africans free movement by the racist government.
- ❖ The denial of Africans by the racist government any chances to better employment.
- ❖ The poor housing conditions and congestion in the areas of Sharpeville, Langa, and Soweto.
- ❖ The failure of peaceful means which left Africans no alternative.
- ❖ The formation of strong political parties like A.N.C, PAC who enlightened Africans about their rights.
- ❖ The continuous grabbing of African fertile and productive land by the whites which was their economic tool.
- ❖ The unfair labour laws that undermined Africans e.g. reduction of African workers wages of Sharpeville.

- ❖ African desire for independence and the slogan Africa for Africans gave them more courage.
- ❖ Presence of courageous leaders of P.A.C like Tsolo who mobilized others.
- ❖ Over exploitation of African labour i.e. long working hours without resting etc.
- ❖ The inequalities before the law where Africans were the Victims of all the unfair laws.
- ❖ Africans hated continuous death of their relatives/ imprisonment and exile.
- ❖ The planned and intended poverty to Africans by the racist government due to poor pay.
- ❖ The poor social facilities like inadequate water and power supply etc made Africans violent.
- ❖ The brutal government response to Africans peaceful demands i.e. shooting them made people more violent
- ❖ Encouragement from the 1920 women protest against the pass laws, which led to the exemption of the women from the pass law.
- ❖ The acceptance effects of Bantustans like overcrowding, diseases etc made Africans more violent.
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, the causes of the Sharpeville massacre were political, social and economic in nature.

Qn. B) What were the effects of the Sharpeville incident in the history of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION.

- The effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ Over 69 people lost their lives.
- ❖ And over 180 were injured and wounded.
- ❖ Many Africans were arrested and imprisoned e.g. Sobukwe and Luthuli.
- ❖ It increased the hatred between the Africans and the Whites in South Africa.
- ❖ It created misery and suffering among Africans due to the loss of their people.
- ❖ Many Africans burnt and destroyed several pass books following Luthuli's instructions.
- ❖ It made the racist government to ban political parties P.A.C and A.N.C in 1960.
- ❖ Military organization like POQO and "the spear of the Nation" were formed to handle the situation.

- ❖ O.A.U became more committed towards the liberation of South Africa.
- ❖ It also made UN to condemn the incident as evil and inhuman.
- ❖ Many Africans were left poor as social economic conditions remained unchanged.
- ❖ It led to declaration of state of emergency by the racist government.
- ❖ Some European investors withdrew their money from South Africa as world opinion went against them.
- ❖ 28th march was declared a mourning day in South Africa.
- ❖ It led to the outbreak of more strikes across the country e.g. Langa in Cape Town.
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required.

Qn. A) Explain the reasons for the outbreak Soweto uprising in 1976.

INTRODUCTION.

- It took place in dirty town of Soweto and occurred on 16th June - September 1976
- It was mainly because of the Bantu education act of 1953 and the University education of 1959 which gave Africans an inferior Curriculum.
- The uprising was started by students in Soweto Township and then spread to other parts like Cape Town, East Landon, Port Elizabeth etc.
- The key leader was Stelle Biko.

BODY

- ❖ The Africans were opposing the Bantu education act of 1953 which gave them Africans an inferior curriculum and the university act of 1959 which prevented them from studying the universities of the Whites.
- ❖ Africans were demanding for good social services like schools, hospitals etc. had been denied to them by the Whites.
- ❖ The role played by the black consciousness movement led by Steve Biko which united Africans against the Whites.
- ❖ The increased arrests without trials, torture of Africans by the racist government.
- ❖ Africans wanted increment in their wages especially the industrial and mine works.
- ❖ African works also wanted improvement in their working conditions like reduction of the working hours.

- ❖ The shooting of innocent students who were peacefully demonstrating on the streets of Soweto in 1976.
- ❖ The collapse of FRELIMO in 1976 in Mozambique and MPLA in Angola encouraged Africans in South Africa to rebel.
- ❖ The failure of Mahatma Ghandi style of non violence e.g. Peaceful demonstration made Africans turn to violence.
- ❖ The formation of the South African Student movement for the black students encouraged them to riot.
- ❖ Lack of equality before the law to the Africans by the whites made them violent.
- ❖ Africans wanted to stop the use passbooks which limited their movement especially in Towns.
- ❖ Africans wanted to stop the high rate of child labour that was going on South Africa.
- ❖ The role played by Archbishop Desmond Tutu who opposed the educational changes and encouraged students to oppose them.
- ❖ Many Africans had lost relatives to death prison and exile hence becoming violent.
- ❖ The increasing unemployment among the Africans made them violent.
- ❖ Etc

In conclusion, Soweto uprising of 1976 was largely opposing the Bantu education act of 1953 and the university act of 1959.

Qn. B) what were the results of this uprising?

INTRODUCTION

- Its effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ It led to loss of lives of both school children and other people.
- ❖ It led to the decline of Black Consciousness Movement (B.C.M) because its founder Steve Biko was killed.
- ❖ It attracted a lot of criticism from internal community about the racist government.
- ❖ It made many disgranted youth to join Umkonto Wesizwe (“spear of the nation”) and started more protest and military activities.
- ❖ It led to the celebration of 16th June of every year to remember the day African child and struggle against total discrimination in South Africa.
- ❖ Industries and business collapsed as African workers refused to work.

- ❖ It led to the increased African nationalism with the rise of African nationalists like Nelson Mandela to fight for African rights.
- ❖ The economy of the racist government declined as investors started withdrawing from South Africa for safety.
- ❖ After the uprising, a secret police and other secret government agencies were allowed to arrest and retain Africans suspected participating in the riot. E.g. Steve Biko.
- ❖ There was massive misery, suffering and torture of Africans.
- ❖ Economic activities like Trade and Agriculture were put on a stand still.
- ❖ After the death of Steve – Biko, the Black consciousness Movement transformed into Azania People's Organization (A.Z.A.P.O) which organized many strikes in Durban, Johannesburg etc.
- ❖ There was great destruction of property e.g. houses, farms etc.
- ❖ After the uprising, no effort was made to improve the Bantu Education.
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, generally the 1976 Soweto uprising increased Africans nationalism with the rise of Africans nationalists like Nelson Mandela to fight for African rights.

Qn. Explain the contributions of the following people in the liberation struggle of South Africa.

A) Bishop Desmond Tutu.

INTRODUCTION.

- He was born in 1931 in Clersdop, Transvaal.
- He studied in Johannesburg Bantu High school and later Bantu normal college in Pretoria and qualified as a teacher.
- He later studied theology and became a priest in 1960.
- In 1978 he started serious attempt to launch his political career when he became the first black general secretary of south African churches.

BODY

- ❖ He demanded for democratic and fair society in South Africa.
- ❖ He fought for freedom of worship for both the Africans and whites.
- ❖ He travelled all over the world convincing western powers like Britain, USA etc to impose economic sanctions against the apartheid regime to cause change.
- ❖ He persuaded his friendly countries from Africa like Zambia, Algeria, Uganda, Libya etc to join the struggle.

- ❖ He mobilized the Anglican church to fight against racial segregation and the Bantustan policy.
- ❖ He was one of the few nationalists who preferred peaceful means to violence to end apartheid in South Africa.
- ❖ He represented the United Democratic Front.(UDF) to persuade the South African government to end apartheid in 1983
- ❖ He also convinced the “Umkhonto Wesizwe” to cease fire.
- ❖ He attracted O.A.U and U.N to put much pressure on the South African government to end apartheid.
- ❖ He encouraged the South African government release all political prisoners like Nelson Mandela etc. who later spearheaded the liberation struggle.
- ❖ He established a center named with the aim to make peace.
- ❖ He encouraged the South African government talks with A.N.C fighters.
- ❖ He was appointed the chairperson of truth and reconciliation commission put in place to heal the wounds of apartheid.
- ❖ He demanded for the removal of pass laws.
- ❖ He blessed the first ever non – racial elections which brought nelson Mandela to power in 1994.
- ❖ In 1984, Tutu won the Noble World peace prize in recognition of his efforts towards fighting apartheid using peaceful means.
- ❖ In 1981, Tutu stepped down as the chairperson of the Truth and reconciliation commission and became a visiting professor of theology in the US.

In conclusion, Bishop Desmond Tutu played a leading role in the liberation struggle of South Africa though in 2010 he retired from public life to have time for his family and relative at the age of 79.

B) FREDRICK DECLERK.

INTRODUCTION.

- He was a son of a senator Jan Declerk born 18th March 1938.
- He graduated as a lawyer from Potscheroom university in 1958.
- Later he became a Member of Parliament in Transvaal.

- He was a supporter of segregate universities and apartheid but later changed his attitude.
- Later became minister of social rehabilitation and he took over power in 1989 succeeding Botha and he was the last White president.

BODY

- ❖ Soon after taking power, he laid strategies to end the white minority rule South Africa.
- ❖ He held talks with A.N.C to discuss the way forward to achieve non racial independence of South Africa without violence.
- ❖ He persuaded th A.N.C military wing Umkhoto Wesizwe to cease fire.
- ❖ He always decampaigned against apartheid and showed commitment towards African cause.
- ❖ He attracted support from religious organization and leaders like Desmond Tutu whose preachings led to end of apartheid.
- ❖ He allowed political parties like PAC , ANC and white liberal parties to operate.
- ❖ His activities attracted internal sympathy and criticism from O.A.U and UN to Africans cause.
- ❖ He held talks with Nelson Mandela while in prison about the future independence of South Africa.
- ❖ He suspended all forms of punishments that targeted political activities.
- ❖ He lifted the state of emergency and restrictions that had been put on Africans by the government.
- ❖ Allowed Bishop Desmond Tutu and Reverend Allan to lead a peaceful demonstration in Cape Town against police brutality.
- ❖ He demanded for education reforms thus Africans started getting quality education.
- ❖ He released Nelson Mandela from prison hence preparing away for political change and freedom in South Africa.
- ❖ He also declared the official end of apartheid in South Africa on June, 30th 1991.
- ❖ He organized the first Multi – racial elections in a free and fair state and won only by A.N.C under Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ He accepted to be 2nd vice president of the 1st non – racial government of Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ He organized the hand over power ceremony to Nelson Mandela on 11th may 1994 when Nelson Mandela took oath of office as the 1st black majority president.
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, Fredrick Decker played an important role in the liberation of South – Africa, he for example released Nelson Mandela hence preparing a fertile ground for political change and freedom.

Qn. A. Explain the factors that contributed to the liberation of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION.

- Liberation simply means to have freedom and independence.
- The liberation struggle of South Africa dates far back but nationalism became more active after the white union constitution 1910.
- And in 1994, South Africa won her independence with Nelson Mandela as the first black president, Thabo Mbeki the 1st vice president and Fredrick Decker as the 2nd vice president.
- The factors were both internal and external.

BODY

- ❖ The role of political parties e.g. A.N.C, P.A.C, U.D.C (United Democratic Front) etc, etc. they voiced for the voiceless Africans, Mobilized people, provided necessary leadership and support against apartheid regime.
- ❖ The role of military wings of political parties e.g. POQO of PAC, “Spear of the nation” of the A.N.C, they organized guerilla attacks against the apartheid regime, planted bombs in those areas that were gazetted by the whites.
- ❖ The role played by Nelson Mandela, i.e. he contributed to 1955 freedom charter a document that was authorized by Africans, coloureds and some whites against apartheid, he formed the youth league, he later stood for open elections in 1994 and won by 64% etc.
- ❖ The role played by Albert Luthuli i.e. he demanded for the voting rights of Africans equality in education, organized a bus boycott in Alexandra township, organized a congress of the people that brought together the coloureds whites and blacks.
- ❖ The role played by religious leaders e.g. Bishop Desmond Tutu appealed for the international sympathy and criticism, encouraged the South Africans government to release all political prisoners like Nelson Mandela etc. who spearheaded the liberation struggle.
- ❖ The role of the mass media e.g. BBC, Voice of America, Radio Cairo, Magazines etc, they pointed out the injustices of the apartheid regime e.g. Nelson Mandela’s book “No easy walk to freedom” inspired many blacks to struggle and end apartheid.
- ❖ The role of musicians like Lucky Dube, Brenda Fassie, Eddie Grant e.g. Lucky Dube composed various songs opposing the regime like different color one people, Soweto etc.
- ❖ The liberation of the neighboring countries like Angola, Mozambique, Namibia, Zimbabwe inspired South Africa to fight for their independence.

- ❖ The role of frontline states like Tanzania, Angola, Mozambique etc which provided bases for the freedom fighters, training and even presented South African problems to U.N.O etc.
- ❖ The role played by U.N.O i.e. internationally called for peace and justice, isolated South Africa diplomatically, socially and economically i.e. it restricted South Africa from importing Military weapon hence weakening her militarily.
- ❖ The role played by the common wealth organization, condemned South Africa racist regime by expelling her from common wealth organization in 1961, and imposed economic sanctions on South Africa to economically weaken her.
- ❖ The role played by the students and youth organization also boosted the struggle e.g. the South African students' association, South African youth Congress etc they organized the Soweto uprising, mobilised people against the pass laws etc.
- ❖ The role played by the black conscious movement led by Steve Biko which incited Africans against the whites.
- ❖ The role of the 1st world war 1914 – 1918 and 2nd world war of 1939 – 1945 they provided the ex-servicemen with courage and determination to fight for their independence, exposed Africans to use of modern weapons etc.
- ❖ The independence of Asian countries e.g Vietnam, China, Cambodia gave South Africans courage and determination to fight for their independence.
- ❖ The role played by Frederick De Clerk i.e. he laid strategies to end the white minority rule in South Africa, always decampaigned apartheid which gave Africans courage.
- ❖ The role of western education which enlightened Africans and began to struggle for their freedom their independence e.g. Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ The role of the Pan African Conference held at Manchester in 1945, it inspired Africans to strongly demand for purely African leadership.
- ❖ The formation of NATO in 1941 in which president Roosevelt of USA and British prime minister Winston Churchill emphasized the principle of self determination of all nations gave South Africans courage.
- ❖ The collapse of communism and its support to the white minority made Africans more courage to fight for their independence.

Qn. A. Why were the Bantustans established in South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- These were homelands or reserves set up by the whites for the settlement of the Africans.
- They were isolated homelands for the Africans to enable them carry out their social

activities and local politics without interfering with the developments of the Whites.

- The policy was highly supported by Dr. H.F. Verwoerd
- Examples of Bantustans included; Transkei and Ciskei for the Xhosa, Gazankulu for the Tsonga, Kwazulu for the Zulu, Ndebele for the Ndebele people etc.

BODY

- ❖ They were established to promote racism and separate developments of the Whites and Africans in South Africa.
- ❖ To prevent the growth of African nationalism by limiting the association of the blacks.
- ❖ To ease defence against the Africans who were hostile to the Whites e.g. the Zulu, Xhosa, etc.
- ❖ To provide permanent labour supply for the whites in mines, industries and on plantations.
- ❖ The need to eliminate competition for jobs between the whites and the Africans.
- ❖ The need to limit free movement of Africans around the streets of the Towns.
- ❖ To enable the minority whites to enjoy and retain the mineral wealth of the country.
- ❖ To prevent Africans from the destructions that they had undertaken e.g. destruction of schools, roads, etc in the fight against apartheid.
- ❖ To ensure modern enslavement of the Africans by the whites.
- ❖ To provide Africans with poor social services.
- ❖ The need by the whites to isolate Africans from participation in the nation politics of South Africa.
- ❖ To convince the European powers that Africans were having self independence.
- ❖ To divide and rule the Africans permanently.
- ❖ To implement the terms of the 1910 constitution of the whites.
- ❖ To ensure that Africans do not own land and other important resources in South Africa.

In conclusion, the reasons for the establishment of the Bantustans were political, social and economic in nature.

B) What were the results of these Bantustans on the people of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION

- The results were both positive and negative

BODY

- ❖ Forced labour policies on Africans on European farms, mines and industries increased.
- ❖ They created disunity among Africans because they were established along tribal lines.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their cattle in reserves because of tsetse flies.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their productive land to the whites hence weakening them economically.
- ❖ Africans lost their voting rights as they were denied to vote and be voted.
- ❖ Political powers of the Africans were restricted within the Bantustans.
- ❖ Africans suffered a lot in reserves because of poor sanitation, poor housing facilities, inadequate water supply etc.
- ❖ Africans were weakened militarily because they were kept so much separate from the whites.
- ❖ The policy led to moral decay among Africans as they began evil practices e.g. homosexuality, prostitution, smoking etc.
- ❖ Some Africans who tried to resist the policy were arrested and imprisoned e.g. Nelson Mandela Desmond Tutu etc.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their lives in the process of demanding for their rights.
- ❖ There was over exploitation of the country's resources especially gold by whites.
- ❖ Africans lost their political rights to the white minority in their country.
- ❖ There was unemployment among Africans since most of productive jobs were given the whites.
- ❖ The policy led to growth of African nationalism with great nationalists like Nelson Mandela, Oliver Thambo etc. to fight for African rights.
- ❖ The policy increased the racial segregation basing on colour.
- ❖ It led to the growth of slums for the poor Africans with their negative impacts like high crime rates etc. e.g. SOWETO.
- ❖ The policy laid a foundation for later uprisings in South Africa e.g the Sharpville massacre in 1960 and Soweto uprising of 1976.
- ❖ The policy led to the formation of political parties in south Africa e.g A.N.C, P.A.C etc. to fight for African rights

To the whites

- ❖ The whites became more hated by the Africans because of the torture and imprisonment of the innocent Africans.
- ❖ The security of the whites greatly improved because Africans could not access towns freely.
- ❖ The whites enjoyed their freedom and liberty without interference from the Africans.
- ❖ The whites were able to get cheap labour since Africans were confined in reserves.
- ❖ The whites dominated the political rights of Africans.
- ❖ The whites took most of the productive land of the Africans.
- ❖ The policy increased white nationalism in the country (South Africa)
- ❖ The whites became more wealthy due to the over exploitation the country's mineral resources.

Generally the results of the Bantustan policy were negative on the Africans and positive on the Whites.

Qn. A. Why was the organisation of African Unity (O.A.U) formed?

INTRODUCTION

- O.A.U was formed on 25th may 1963 at Addisababa the city of Ethiopia which later became its permanent headquarters.
- It was formed by thirty two (32) heads of African governments and these included; Nkwame- Nkruma of Ghana, Col. Abdul Gamel Nasser of Egypt, Jomo Kinyatta of Kenya, Julius Nyerere of Tanzania, Heille Sellasre of Ethiopia, Milton Obote of Uganda etc.

BODY

- ❖ It was formed to promote solidarity and unity among African states.
- ❖ To end all forms of colonialism in Africa.
- ❖ To provide Africans states with a permanent organistion to help them discuss their issues regularly and get practical solutions to them.
- ❖ To promote economic intergration among member states for a wider market.
- ❖ To help in the defence of the independence of African states.
- ❖ To cooperate with other peace loving international bodies e.g. U.N.O in the fight for peace, harmony and freedom.
- ❖ To protect the rights of all the oppressed on the continent in line with the declaration of the universal human rights charter of U.N.O.

- ❖ To improve the living standards and conditions of the Africans as a group and individual.
- ❖ To promote science and technology in Africa.
- ❖ To promote cooperation among African states in social, cultural, political and in economic fields.
- ❖ To end apartheid and racism in South Africa and racist Rhodesia.
- ❖ Etc.

Conclusively the reasons for the formation of O.A.U were political, social and economic in nature.

Qn. B). Explain its role in the fight against apartheid in South Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- It's roles were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ It requested the member states to contribute a certain percentage of their national income to help in the fight against apartheid.
- ❖ O.A.U organized conferences to find ways on how to deal with the racist government and get support against apartheid e.g in Tanga, Kampala etc.
- ❖ O.A.U isolated nay member state that was suspected of operating with the apartheid government of South Africa. E.g. Zaire under Mubuku Seseku.
- ❖ O.A.U imposed economic sanctions on South Africa as away of weakening the racist government economically.
- ❖ O.A.U requested member states to accommodate Africans that were oppressed by the racist government.
- ❖ O.A.U persuaded European powers not to sell any arms to the racist government in order to weaken it militarily.
- ❖ It persuaded member states to deny travel documents to their citizens wishing to travel to South Africa.
- ❖ O.A.U provided A.N.C guerillas with logistics i.e. food, arms etc in the fight against the racist government.
- ❖ Formed a committee of liberation based in Tanzania whose duty was to liberate South Africa from apartheid.
- ❖ O.A.U issued the Mogadishu declaration of 1971 and Dar- el- salaam declaration of 1975 to end racism in South Africa.

- ❖ O.A.U forced the racist government to effect political reforms by freeing political parties.
- ❖ The member states of O.A.U agreed to pressurize the racist government to release all political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandel, Albert Sobukwe, etc.
- ❖ Member states of O.A.U boycotted the Olympics against Newziland and South Africa's participation in 1976.
- ❖ Through the efforts of O.A.U, Cuba was convinced to send troops to the neighboring country Namibia in the efforts against apartheid government.
- ❖ Member states of O.A.U e.g. Tanzania, Zambia, gave in military support in the fight against apartheid regime.
- ❖ O.A.U convinced Europe that apartheid could not be changed peacefully.
- ❖ O.A.U provided scholarships to South Africans who later led the struggle for their independence
- ❖ It acted as the mouth piece for the voiceless Africans. i.e spoke violently against the racist government.
- ❖ O.A.U decampaigned un popular laws of the racist government like Bantustans, employment laws etc.
- ❖ It called for solidarity and unity among the A.N.C fighters

A conclusion is required. Eg

- O.A.U played both internal and external roles in the struggle against the apartheid regime.

Qn. C. What problems did O.A.U face in its struggle against apartheid?

INTRODUCTION

- O.A.U faced both internal and external problems

BODY

- ❖ Some Africans states continued to support the apartheid policy e.g. Malawi, Zaire.
- ❖ On international scene, some big powers like Britain, France continued strongly supporting South-Africa.
- ❖ The U.N Security Council took so long to effect the arms embargo on South Africa.
- ❖ The apartheid government had a modern, stronger and efficient army that could not be

easily fought by O.A.U.

- ❖ The apartheid government also had a strong economy compared to other African countries thus economic embargo could not weaken it.
- ❖ Member states were divided along religious, political and ethnic lines thus could not come together.
- ❖ Some member states refused to accept the refugees of apartheid in their countries because of poor economies.
- ❖ The cold war politics which divided the continent into two blocks i.e the capitalist and the communist hence disunity.
- ❖ O.A.U did not have an army of its own to fight against the racist government.
- ❖ Some member state had internal problems e.g. civil wars thus they could not get time to fully fight the racist government e.g. Sudan. Somalia etc
- ❖ Some member states had conflicts among themselves e.g. Uganda and Tanzania which made the struggle against apartheid difficult.
- ❖ South Africa repeatedly invaded the frontline states and weakened them e.g. Lesotho, Swaziland, etc.
- ❖ Frontline states like Angola, Mozambique, etc had their internal rebels supported by racist government e.g. UNITA, FRELIMO.
- ❖ Arrests and imprisonment of political leaders without trials e.g. Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ South Africa also killed her great opponents both within and outside e.g. Steve Biko, Samora Micheal.
- ❖ **Etc**

A conclusion is required e.g. in conclusion O.A.U faced political, social, military and economic problems.

Qn. A. Why was the PAC (Pan African Congress) formed in 1959?

INTRODUCTION.

- PAC was formed in April 1959 as a break away faction from the A.N.C (African National Congress).
- It was formed by young African nationalistic leaders like Madzunya, Leballo, Pothlako and Robert Sobukwe.
- They were inspired with Ghandism non violence approach to achieve independence.
- The first president of PAC was Robert Mangaliso Sobukwe.

BODY

- ❖ It was formed to defend and achieve the civil rights of Africans.
- ❖ To provide a national wide organization to mobilize Africans against racial discrimination.
- ❖ To oppose the pass laws and their effects which had reduced Africans to a second class citizen.
- ❖ To oppose the inferior type of education given to Africans that made them backward.
- ❖ To oppose the conservative leadership of Dr, Verwoerd.
- ❖ To oppose the Bantustan policy which had isolated Africans from the rest of the country.
- ❖ To fight for the liberty and freedom of Africans.
- ❖ It was formed to act as the mouth piece for the voiceless Africans
- ❖ To fight against the white enslavement of Africans.
- ❖ The need to totally eradicate apartheid in South Africa.
- ❖ To train African leaders and equip them with a strong feeling to the entire continent.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. B). Explain the role of P.A.C in the liberation of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- Its roles were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ It adopted a much more militant approach which speeded up the pace for freedom.
- ❖ PAC allied with ANC and led anti – pass campaigns of 1960 on Sharpville.
- ❖ Its leader Robert Sobukwe was arrested and imprisoned which hardened the spirits for political change in South Africa.
- ❖ it attracted international criticism from U.S.A, UK and UN to oppose the racist government.
- ❖ PAC called for release of political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandela who strongly fought for South Africa's independence and in 1994, he became the first elected president of South Africa.
- ❖ Its leadership gave in their lives for the sake of freedom and liberty for all.
- ❖ PAC formed a military wing called POQO to sabotage government programmes.

- ❖ It encouraged the industrial workers to refuse to work that disrupted industrial output.
- ❖ It greatly opposed apartheid laws e.g. creation of Bantustans, poor education policy etc.
- ❖ PAC strongly demanded for purely African leadership.
- ❖ P.A.C organized strikes in Pondland and Transvaal demanding for social, political and economic reforms.
- ❖ It's leadership encouraged people to congest the prisons, by handing themselves into the nearest police posts.
- ❖ It's leadership organized the march on the Cape town to test protest outside the parliament.
- ❖ It also acquired weapons to use in the struggle against the racist government.
- ❖ It's opposition to the A.N.C elitist approach made it re- organize itself in the struggle against the racist government.
- ❖ Its activities made South Africa ungovernable for the whites.
- ❖ Etc.

A conclusion is required e.g. In conclusion, PAC played a leading role in the liberation of South Africa, however in 1978 its 1st leader Sobukwe died and in 1986, his party also followed him after the death of other leaders i.e Pothlako, Leballo etc.

Qn. A) Why was UMKHOTO WESIZWE formed?

INTRODUCTION.

- It was also known as the "the spear of the nation"
- Formed in June 1961 but it was launched on 16th/12/1961 with its headquarters at Rivonia in Johannesburg.
- It was founded by Nelson Mandela and other ANC militants.

BODY

- ❖ To act as a mouth piece for the voiceless people
- ❖ To totally eradicate apartheid in South Africa.
- ❖ To fight arbitrary arrest and imprisonment of the key leaders.
- ❖ To fight for civil and political rights for all
- ❖ To unite Africans for a common cause.
- ❖ To carry out sabotage activities.

- ❖ To seek for recognition from international bodies like U.N.O
- ❖ To demand for meaningful political change in South Africa.
- ❖ To avoid loss of human life.
- ❖ To counteract with the white brutality.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. B) Explain its role in the fight against apartheid in South Africa.

INTRODUCTION

- ❖ Its roles were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ It carried numerous bombings of civilian, military and industrial centers which showed and convinced South Africans that A.N.C was a very serious Nationalist movement e.g. Bombed the Natal town, the bombing of a bar in Durban which left three people dead and over 70 injured.
- ❖ Pressurized the apartheid government to relax its racist laws/policies.
- ❖ Campaigned for freedom, democracy, peace and unity of all South Africans.
- ❖ Convinced friendly communist countries like Cuba to train her youth in guerilla warfare.
- ❖ Convinced other frontline states like Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia etc to extend all types of help towards the freedom fighters.
- ❖ Attracted support from A.O.U liberation committee to fight freedom.
- ❖ Convinced other international organization like Nonaligned movement, Arab league to help the struggle.
- ❖ Attacked inhuman apartheid policies like Bantustans, poor education etc.
- ❖ Demanded for the release of all political prisoners e.g. Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ Inspired musicians like prince Far and Authors like M.K Asante to publicize African suffering and popularize the struggle.
- ❖ It was responsible for violent strikes e.g. the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- ❖ Convinced other freedom movement such as FREELIMO in Mozambique, MPOLA in Angola etc to ally and fight colonialism together with it.
- ❖ Mobilized mass support towards the independence struggle.

- ❖ Convinced many U.N.O members not to see “MK” as terrorists but as freedom fighters.
- ❖ Convinced western powers i.e. U.S.A and U.K to withdraw their support from apartheid.
- ❖ Provided military skills to the A.N.C fighters
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, Umkhoto Wesizwe played both internal and external roles in the struggle against the apartheid regime.

Qn. A. Explain the role of the following in the fight against apartheid.

a) Frontline states

INTRODUCTION

- These were countries that risked their independence and wealth to face the apartheid regime on the side of the Africans Freedom fighters like A.N.C.
- These included Uganda, Zambia, Mozambique, Tanzania, etc with their headquarters in Dar-es-salaam and Julius Nyerere was a key leader.

BODY

- ❖ Provided money and other logistics i.e. food, medicine, etc. to freedom fighters like A.N.C in their
 - ❖ struggle against apartheid.
 - ❖ Provided training grounds to south African guerillas e.g. in Uganda, Mozambique, Tanzania, etc.
 - ❖ Strongly supported the view that only violence could change South Africa.
 - ❖ Convinced U.N.O to put sanctions/embargo on South Africa to weaken her economically.
 - ❖ Allowed many refugees from South Africa in their countries and gave them food, medical, education etc.
 - ❖ Convinced other international bodies i.e. the Non aligned movement, Arab league to help them in the struggle.
 - ❖ Held many conferences to lay strategies for the struggle in various cities e.g. Kampala, Tanga, Dar-es-salaam etc.
 - ❖ Campaigned against unpopular laws like Bantustans, educational laws etc.
 - ❖ Convinced other Africans countries to stop their citizens from traveling to and from South Africa.
 - ❖ Inspired the freedom fighters to be more determined and courageous in the fight for

their independence.

- ❖ Convinced neighboring countries especially South African Development and Coordination Conference (SADACC) members not to trade with South Africa to weaken her economically.
- ❖ Convinced O.A.U to form a liberation committee and gave all forms of support to freedom fighters.
- ❖ In 1970, Kaunda a frontline president led a delegation to western European Capitals to discourage them selling arms to the apartheid government.
- ❖ Always tabled African problems in the U.N.O meetings.
- ❖ Demanded for the release of political prisoners like Nelson Mandela who later spearheaded the struggle for the country's independence.
- ❖ Offered supply routes for the personnel and weapons especially through port Maputo in Mozambique.
- ❖ Called for solidarity and togetherness among the A.N.C. fighters.
- ❖ Etc

In conclusion Frontline states played political, social, and economic roles in the struggle against apartheid regime.

Qn. B) U.N.O

INTRODUCTION.

- ❖ It was formed in 1945 after the second world war and it came into being in the American city of San- Francisco
- ❖ It replaced the disgraced league of Nations with the major aims of keeping world peace.

BODY.

- ❖ She advocated for equality for all people
- ❖ U.N.O gave moral and financial support to freedom fighters against apartheid regime.
- ❖ U.N.O imposed an economic embargo on South Africa to weaken her economically.
- ❖ Allowed A.N.C members to come and address U.N.O members and mobilize help from them.
- ❖ Campaigned for the release of political prisoners like Nelson Mandela who later spearheaded the struggle for south African independence.

- ❖ U.N.O imposed travel sanctions i.e. no plane was to fly to South Africa.
- ❖ Banned South Africa from all its organs e.g. World Bank, UNESCO, WHO etc.
- ❖ U.N.O supported activities of the frontline states and created a trust fund which provided humanitarian assistance e.g. food.
- ❖ It's court of justice always criticized South Africa for all its excesses on the innocent Africans.
- ❖ It organized elections for all races in South Africa and sent observers in 1994 elections.
- ❖ Recognized nationalists e.g. Nelson Mandela as freedom fighters but not as terrorists as Americans described them.
- ❖ U.N.O called for respect of human rights and self determination of all people.
- ❖ U.N.O put pressure on the racist government to cause change.
- ❖ U.N.O encouraged member states to house and train A.N.C guerillas.
- ❖ Encouraged member states to welcome refugees from South Africa and give them food, medical etc.
- ❖ Isolated South Africa especially in sports e.g. banned South Africa from Olympic Games.

In conclusion, U.N.O's roles in the struggle against apartheid were political, social and economic in nature.

Qn. A) Explain the causes of the Sharpeville campaign of 1960.

INTRODUCTION.

- This incident is widely known as the Sharpeville massacre.
- It occurred during the apartheid regime under Dr. Verwoerd, in the black township of Sharpeville
- It occurred on Monday 21st March 1960.

BODY

- ❖ The killing of over 60 innocent Africans by the panicky policemen.
- ❖ The role of LT Col. Piennar and Major Van Zyl who led the Sharpeville police station and supported the shooting of African protesters.
- ❖ The character of African protesters i.e. they threw stones at Lt.Col. Piennar's car which engaged the police.
- ❖ The limiting of African freedom of movement by the racist government.

- ❖ The denial of Africans by the racist government any chances to better employment.
- ❖ The poor housing conditions and congestion in the areas of Sharpeville, Langa, and Soweto.
- ❖ The failure of peaceful means which left Africans with no alternative.
- ❖ The formation of strong political parties like A.N.C, PAC who enlightened Africans about their rights.
- ❖ The continuous grabbing of African fertile and productive land by the whites which was their economic tool.
- ❖ The unfair labour laws that undermined Africans e.g. reduction of African worker's wages of Sharpeville.
- ❖ African desire for independence and the slogan Africa for Africans gave them more courage.
- ❖ Presence of courageous leaders of P.A.C like Tsolo who mobilized others.
- ❖ Over exploitation of African labour i.e. long working hours without resting etc.
- ❖ The inequalities before the law where Africans were the Victims of all the unfair laws.
- ❖ Africans hated continuous death of their relatives/ imprisonment and exile.
- ❖ The planned and intended poverty to Africans by the racist government due to poor pay.
- ❖ The poor social facilities like inadequate water and power supply etc made Africans violent.
- ❖ The brutal government response to Africans peaceful demands i.e. shooting them made people more violent.
- ❖ Encouragement from the 1920 women protest against the pass laws, which led to the exemption of the women from the pass law.
- ❖ The unacceptable effects of Bantustans like overcrowding, diseases etc made Africans more violent.
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, the causes of the Sharpeville massacre were political, social and economic in nature.

Qn. B) What were the effects of the Sharpeville incident in the history of South Africa?

INTRODUCTION.

- The effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ Over 69 people lost their lives.
- ❖ And over 180 were injured and wounded.
- ❖ Many Africans were arrested and imprisoned e.g. Sobukwe and Luthuli.
- ❖ It increased the hatred between the Africans and the Whites in South Africa.
- ❖ It created misery and suffering among Africans due to the loss of their people.
- ❖ Many Africans burnt and destroyed several pass books following Luthuli's instructions.
- ❖ It made the racist government to ban political parties like P.A.C and A.N.C in 1960.
- ❖ Military organizations like POQO and "the spear of the Nation" were formed to handle the situation.
- ❖ O.A.U became more committed towards the liberation of South Africa.
- ❖ It also made UN to condemn the incident as evil and inhuman.
- ❖ Many Africans were left poor as social economic conditions remained unchanged.
- ❖ It led to declaration of the state of emergency by the racist government.
- ❖ Some European investors withdrew their money from South Africa as world opinion went against them.
- ❖ 28th march was declared a mourning day in South Africa.
- ❖ It led to the outbreak of more strikes across the country e.g. Langa in Cape Town.
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required.

Qn. A) Explain the reasons for the outbreak of the Soweto uprising in 1976.

INTRODUCTION.

- It took place in dirty town of Soweto and occurred on 16th June - September 1976
- It was mainly because of the Bantu education act of 1953 and the University education act of 1959 which gave Africans an inferior Curriculum.
- The uprising was started by students in Soweto Township and then spread to other parts like Cape Town, East Landon, Port Elizabeth etc.
- The key leader was Stelle Biko.

BODY

- ❖ The Africans were opposing the Bantu education act of 1953 which gave them an inferior curriculum and the university act of 1959 which prevented them from studying in the universities of the Whites.
- ❖ Africans were demanding for good social services like schools, hospitals etc. which had been denied to them by the Whites.
- ❖ The role played by the black conscious movement led by Steve Biko which united Africans against the Whites.
- ❖ The increased arrests without trials, torture of Africans by the racist government.
- ❖ Africans wanted increment in their wages especially the industrial and mine workers.
- ❖ African workers also wanted improvement in their working conditions like reduction of the working hours.
- ❖ The shooting of innocent students who were peacefully demonstrating on the streets of Soweto in 1976.
- ❖ The collapse of the Portuguese rule and the success of FRELIMO in 1975 in Mozambique and MPLA in Angola encouraged Africans in South Africa to rebel.
- ❖ The failure of Mahatma Ghandi style of non violence e.g. Peaceful demonstration made Africans turn to violence.
- ❖ The formation of the South African Students movement for the black students encouraged them to riot.
- ❖ Lack of equality before the law to the Africans by the whites made them violent.
- ❖ Africans wanted to stop the use passbooks which limited their movement especially in Towns.
- ❖ Africans wanted to stop the high rate of child labour that was going on South Africa.
- ❖ The role played by Archbishop Desmond Tutu who opposed the educational changes and encouraged students to oppose them.
- ❖ Many Africans had lost relatives to death, prison and exile hence becoming violent.
- ❖ The increasing unemployment among the Africans made them violent.
- ❖ Etc

In conclusion, Soweto uprising of 1976 was largely opposing the Bantu education act of 1953 and the university act of 1959.

Qn. B) what were the results of this uprising?

INTRODUCTION

- Its effects were both positive and negative.

BODY

- ❖ It led to loss of lives of both school children and other people.
- ❖ It led to the decline of Black Conscious Movement (B.C.M) because its founder Steve Biko was killed.
- ❖ It attracted a lot of criticism from international community about the racist government.
- ❖ It made many disgranted youths to join Umkonto Wesizwe (“spear of the nation”) and started more protests and military activities.
- ❖ It led to the celebration of 16th June of every year to remember the day of African child and struggle against the racial discrimination in South Africa.
- ❖ Industries and businesses collapsed as African workers refused to work.
- ❖ It led to the increased African nationalism with the rise of African nationalists like Nelson Mandela to fight for African rights.
- ❖ The economy of the racist government declined as investors started withdrawing from South Africa for safety.
- ❖ After the uprising, a secrete police and other secrete government agencies were allowed to arrest and retain Africans suspected of participating in the riot. E.g. Steve Biko.
- ❖ There was massive misery, suffering and torture of Africans.
- ❖ Economic activities like Trade and Agriculture were put on a stand still.
- ❖ After the death of Steve Biko, the Black conscious Movement transformed into Azania People’s Organization (A.Z.A.P.O) which organized many strikes in Durban, Johannesburg etc.
- ❖ There was great destruction of property e.g. houses, farms etc.
- ❖ After the uprising, no effort was made to improve on the Bantu Education.
- ❖ Etc.

Generally the 1976 Soweto uprising increased Africans nationalism with the rise of Africans nationalists like Nelson Mandela to fight for African rights.

Qn. Explain the contribution of the following people in the liberation struggle of South Africa.

A) Bishop Desmond Tutu.

INTRODUCTION.

- He was born in 1931 in Clersdop, Transvaal.

- He studied in Johannesburg Bantu High school and later Bantu normal college in Pretoria and qualified as a teacher.
- He later studied theology and became a priest in 1960.
- In 1978 he started serious attempts to launch his political career when he became the first black general secretary of south African churches.

BODY

- ❖ He demanded for a democratic and a fair society in South Africa.
- ❖ He fought for freedom of worship for both the Africans and whites.
- ❖ He travelled all over the world convincing western powers like Britain, USA etc to impose economic sanctions against the apartheid regime to cause change.
- ❖ He persuaded his friendly countries from Africa like Zambia, Algeria, Uganda, Libya etc to join the struggle.
- ❖ He mobilized the Anglican church to fight against racial segregation and the Bantustan policy.
- ❖ He was one of the few nationalists who preferred peaceful means to violence to end apartheid in South Africa.
- ❖ He represented the United Democratic Front.(UDF) to persuade the South African government to end apartheid in 1983
- ❖ He also convinced the “Umkhonto Wesizwe” to cease fire.
- ❖ He attracted O.A.U and U.N to put much pressure on the South African government to end apartheid.
- ❖ He encouraged the South African government release all political prisoners like Nelson Mandela etc. who later spearheaded the liberation struggle.
- ❖ He established a center named after him i.e. Desmond Tutu peace center with the aim to make peace.
- ❖ He encouraged the South African government talks with A.N.C fighters.
- ❖ He was appointed the chairperson of truth and reconciliation commission put in place to heal the wounds of apartheid.
- ❖ He demanded for the removal of pass laws.
- ❖ He blessed the first ever non – racial elections which brought Nelson Mandela to power in 1994.

- ❖ In 1984, Tutu won the Noble World peace prize in recognition of his efforts towards fighting apartheid using peaceful means.
- ❖ In 1981, Tutu stepped down as the chairperson of the Truth and reconciliation commission and became a visiting professor of theology in the US.

In conclusion, Bishop Desmond Tutu played a leading role in the liberation struggle of South Africa though in 2010 he retired from public life to have time for his family and relatives at the age of 79.

B) FREDRICK DECLERK.

INTRODUCTION.

- He was a son of a senator Jan De'clerk born on 18th March 1938.
- He graduated as a lawyer from Potsherroom university in 1958.
- Later he became a Member of Parliament in Transvaal.
- He was a supporter of segregative universities and apartheid but later changed his attitude.
- Later became minister of social rehabilitation and he took over power in 1989 succeeding Botha and he was the last White president.

BODY

- ❖ Soon after taking power, he laid strategies to end the white minority rule in South Africa.
- ❖ He held talks with A.N.C to discuss the way forward to achieve non racial independence of South Africa without violence.
- ❖ He persuaded th A.N.C military wing Umkhonto Wesizwe to cease fire.
- ❖ He always decampaigned against apartheid and showed commitment towards African cause.
- ❖ He attracted support from religious organizations and leaders like Desmond Tutu whose preachings led to the end of apartheid.
- ❖ He allowed political parties like PAC , ANC and white liberal parties to operate.
- ❖ His activities attracted international sympathy and criticism from O.A.U and UN to Africans cause.
- ❖ He held talks with Nelson Mandela while in prison about the future independence of South Africa.

- ❖ He suspended all forms of capital punishments that targeted political activities.
- ❖ He lifted the state of emergency and restrictions that had been put on Africans by the government.
- ❖ Allowed Bishop Desmond Tutu and Reverend Allan to lead a peaceful demonstration in Cape Town against police brutality.
- ❖ He demanded for educational reforms thus Africans started getting quality education.
- ❖ He released Nelson Mandela from prison hence preparing away for political change and freedom in South Africa.
- ❖ He also declared the official end of apartheid in South Africa on June, 30th 1991.
- ❖ He organized the first Multi – racial elections in a free and fair state and they were won by A.N.C under Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ He accepted to be the 2nd vice president of the 1st non – racial government of Nelson Mandela.
- ❖ He organized the hand over power ceremony to Nelson Mandela on 11th may 1994 when Nelson Mandela took oath of office as the 1st black majority president.
- ❖ Etc.

In conclusion, Fredrick De'clerk played an important role in the liberation of South – Africa, he fore example released Nelson Mandela hence preparing a fertile ground for political change and freedom in South Africa.

Qn. A. Explain the factors that contributed to the liberation of South Africa.

INTRODUCTION.

- Liberation simply means to have freedom and independence.
- The liberation struggle of South Africa dates far back but nationalism became more active after the white union constitution 1910.
- And in 1994, South Africa won her independence with Nelson Mandela as the first black president, Thabo Mbeki the 1st vice president and Fredrick Declerk as the 2nd vice president.
- The factors were both internal and external.

BODY

- ❖ The role of political parties e.g. A.N.C, P.A.C, U.D.C (United Democratic Front) etc, they voiced for the voiceless Africans, Mobilized people, provided necessary leadership and support against apartheid regime.
- ❖ The role of military wings of political parties e.g. POQO of PAC, "Spear of the nation" of

the A.N.C, they organized guerilla attacks against the apartheid regime, planted bombs in those areas that were gazetted by the whites.

- ❖ The role played by Nelson Mandela, i.e. he contributed to 1955 freedom charter a document that was authorized by Africans, coloureds and some whites against apartheid, he formed the youth league, he later stood for open elections in 1994 and won by 64% etc.
- ❖ The role played by Albert Luthuli i.e. he demanded for the voting rights of Africans, equality in education, organized a bus boycott in Alexandria township, organized a congress of the people that brought together the coloureds, whites and blacks.
- ❖ The role played by religious leaders e.g. Bishop Desmond Tutu appealed for the international sympathy and criticism, encouraged the South African government to release all political prisoners like Nelson Mandela etc. who spearheaded the liberation struggle.
- ❖ The role of the mass media e.g. BBC, Voice of America, Radio Cairo, Magazines etc, they pointed out the injustices of the apartheid regime e.g. Nelson Mandela's book "No easy walk to freedom" inspired many blacks to struggle and end apartheid.
- ❖ The role of musicians like Lucky Dube, Brenda Fassie, Eddie Grant e.g. Lucky Dube composed various songs opposing the regime like different color one people, Soweto etc.
- ❖ The liberation of the neighboring countries like Angola, Mozambique, Namibia, Zimbabwe inspired South Africans to fight for their independence.
- ❖ The role of frontline states like Tanzania, Angola, Mozambique etc which provided bases for the freedom fighters, training and even presented South African problems to U.N.O etc.
- ❖ The role played by U.N.O i.e. internationally called for peace and justice, isolated South Africa diplomatically, socially and economically i.e. it restricted South Africa from importing Military weapons hence weakening her militarily.
- ❖ The role played by the commonwealth organization, condemned South Africa racist regime by expelling her from commonwealth organization in 1961, and imposed economic sanctions on South Africa to economically weaken her.
- ❖ The role played by the students and youth organization also boosted the struggle e.g. the South African students' association, South African youth Congress etc they organized the Soweto uprising, mobilised people against the pass laws etc.
- ❖ The role played by the black conscious movement led by Steve Biko which united Africans against the whites.
- ❖ The role of the 1st world war 1914 – 1918 and 2nd world war of 1939 – 1945 they provided the ex- services men with courage and determination to fight for their independence, exposed Africans to use of modern weapons etc.

revolution.

- ❖ The discovery of minerals in south Africa e.g diamond in 1867 and gold in 1884 in Witwatersland made the German to believe that the mineral belt extended to SouthAfrica.
- ❖ Pressure from German merchants (Traders) who wanted protection from their home government
- ❖ The need to stop slave trade and promote legitiment trade.
- ❖ The need to spread Christianity among the Africans in order to do away with African Traditional Religion which they refered to as stanic.
- ❖ The need to settle their surplus population which was due to industrial revolution which had replaced human labour.
- ❖ Pressure from other European powers especially Britain who had already picked interest in the area.
- ❖ The favorable coastal climate of Namibia which was good for both settlement and agriculture.
- ❖ The role of German explorers who exposed South West Africa potentials to the Germans.
- ❖ The request of the Rhenist missionary Society to the King of Prussia for protection made the Germans to occupy Namibia.
- ❖ The existing conflicts between Nama and Herero called for foreign intervation.
- ❖ The support from the German parliament cleared the way for the German occupation of Namibia.
- ❖ The need to acquire land for agricultueal practices.
- ❖ The role of Britsh commissioner Sir Charles Warren who warned the Germans to that Bechwanaland and Kalahari were under British Protectorate.
- ❖ Etc

In conclusion, the Germans occupied Namibia largely due to economic motives.

Qn. B) What were the results of German rule on the Africans.

INTRODUCTION.

- The effects werer both positive and negative and they were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ Africans lost their productive land to the Germans hence weakening them economically.

- ❖ Africans lost their cattle to the Germans especially the Herero in form of taxations.
- ❖ It led to wide spread of Christianity among Africans by the German Missionaries.
- ❖ There was loss of lives through rebellions e.g during the Nama- Herero rebellion.
- ❖ Africans were subject to forced labour on the German established farms and other public works like road construction.
- ❖ Africans were displaced to neighboring countries e.g Zimbabwe, Zambia, Botswana due to German mistreatment.
- ❖ Introduction of passbooks which restricted African freedom of movement.
- ❖ Africans lost their independence when the Germans declared a protectorate over Namibia.
- ❖ Africans were put into reserves under poor conditions like poor medical facilities, no water etc.
- ❖ There was development of plantation farming in Namibia e.g sugarcane and cotton plantations.
- ❖ Some Africans got jobs on German established plantations but they were poorly paid.
- ❖ Africans chiefs lost their powers and respect to the Germans.
- ❖ There was increased influx of the German settlers in Namibia.
- ❖ It led to the rise of African nationalism through the formation of political parties like SWAPO to fight for African rights.
- ❖ There was development of better infrastructures in form of roads, railways, schools etc. in the country.
- ❖ The Germans fought against slavery and slave trade especially among the Ovambo.
- ❖ There was destruction of property e.g homelands farms during the Nama- Herero resistance of 1904.
- ❖ Commerce and trade declined during the course of fighting leading to poverty among Africans.
- ❖ Agriculture was also put on standstill leading to famine among Africans.
- ❖ Africans were divided e.g the Herero never supported the Nama against the Germans.
- ❖ There was urbanization in Namibia i.e small towns developed into large cities e.g Windhoek, Tsumeb, etc.

Generally the results of German rule on the Africans were largely negative.

Qn. C) Why did Namibia remain under South Africa's control for so long?

INTRODUCTION

- Since 1920, Namibia has been under South African control until 1990 when she got her independence.
- The reasons for this were political and economic in nature.

BODY.

- ❖ Economically Namibia was rich in minerals like diamond, gold, Uranium, Phosphates copper etc thus South African government just leave her.
- ❖ Namibia had very rich fishing grounds that could not just be left.
- ❖ The area had favorable agricultural potentials especially in the North where fruits and livestock could do well to sustain South Africa's economy.
- ❖ Namibia was a market for South African goods.
- ❖ South Africa had to protect the investments her nationals had set up in Namibia.
- ❖ The Namibians were disunited along tribal lines i.e the Nama verses the Herero thus they could not easily unite to fight South African government.
- ❖ The south African government had established harsh policies like Bantustans which weakened and undermined the growth of Nationalism in Namibia.
- ❖ Some big powers e.g U.S.A, Britain, Canada continued to support South Africa to remain in Namibia.
- ❖ The weakness of Namibia's political parties i.e SWAPO and SWANU i.e they could not easily unite Namibians to fight for their independence.
- ❖ The un-independent Namibia would provide bases for A.N.C to destabilise the South African government.
- ❖ South African government wanted to protect her Boer citizens who were in Namibia.
- ❖ Some African countries and leaders continued supporting South Africa's control over Namibia e.g Mobutu Seseko of Zaire, Kamuzubanda of Malawi.
- ❖ South Africa feared that communist countries like Russia, Cuba, China, etc would use an independent Namibia to spread communism in parts of South Africa.
- ❖ The Africaners (Boers) threatened to vote out the government if they gave away Namibia.
- ❖ The influence of cold war politics which divided Namibia's population along ideological differences i.e capitalist against communist also delayed Namibia's independence.
- ❖ The weakness of O.A.U i.e it lacked an army of its own to help Namibians in their struggle for

independence.

- ❖ The double standards of U.N i.e it took so long to take firm measures against South Africa.
- ❖ South Africa was a very rich country which enabled her to contain frontline states and Namibia herself.
- ❖ Absence of strong nationalism among the Namibians also delayed Namibia's independence.
- ❖ Etc

A conclusion is required.

Qn. A) Explain the role of Sam Nujoma and SWAPO in the struggle for Namibia's independence.

INTRODUCTION.

- Sam Nujoma belonged to the elite nationalists group and he was an Ovambo by tribe.
- In 1959, he formed the Ovambo Land People's Organisation to gather with other tribes of Namibia
- In 1960, the party was transformrd into SWAPO (South West African People's Organisatio) at the request of Kevin the Namibia representative at the UN.

CONTENT

- ❖ On 25th August 1966, they launched an armed struggle against the African government in Namibia.
- ❖ Sam Nujoma and SWAPO encouraged Africans to strike against foreign rule.
- ❖ SWAPO looked for support from fellow national movement of MPLA, FRELIMO etc towards independence struggle.
- ❖ SWAPO cooperated with SWANU to coordinate efforts against the whites.
- ❖ SWAPO sent its recruits for military training traning in states like Tanzania, Russia, Algeria etc who became instrumental in the struggle for Namibia's independence.
- ❖ SWAPO also sought for support from UN in order to force the government of SouthAfrica out of South Africa.
- ❖ SWAPO accepted the declaration of a cease fire for 7 months and a transition period leading to the general elections of Namibia in 1989.
- ❖ SWAPO mobilised the dense population of Namibia against the apartheid regime.
- ❖ They called for justice, liberty and humandigity to prevail in Namibia.
- ❖ After the victory of MPLA, SWAPO opened up military bases in Angola which increased military

pressure.

- ❖ SWAPO advocated for military campaign to fight imperialism of South African government by forming its armed wing.
- ❖ SWAPO won the support of the communist countries like Russia, Cuba etc in the struggle against apartheid regime.
- ❖ Sam Nujoma together with other party leaders risked and sacrificed their lives for Namibia's independence.
- ❖ Sam Nujoma and SWAPO campaigned against the violation of the terms of the trusteeship that the South Africa violated.
- ❖ Sam Nujoma demanded for independence now not later.
- ❖ Nujoma published articles through the press, radio, etc against the apartheid regime.
- ❖ Sam Nujoma and SWAPO worked for unity of the Namibians i.e the Ovambo, Herero, Nama etc in the Struggle for independence.
- ❖ SWAPO opposed the Törnagel proposals which never supported a fully independent Namibia.
- ❖ SWAPO boycotted participation in politics because the apartheid government had continued grabbing African land.
- ❖ From 1973 onwards, SWAPO disrupted whites' activities in homeland of Ovambo.
- ❖ Sam Nujoma the leader of SWAPO contested and won independence elections on 21st March 1990 upto 2003.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. B) What problems did they face in the struggle.

INTRODUCTION.

- The problems were political, social and economic in nature.

BODY

- ❖ They lacked financial support to carry out their activities e.g purchasing fire arms etc.
- ❖ There were divisions e.g SWAPO against SWANU, Ovambo against Herero etc.
- ❖ Many nationalists were arrested and killed by the Whites since they had a strict spy network.
- ❖ SWAPO lacked a military base within Namibia and it only operated outside in Angola.
- ❖ The South African Government used divide and rule policy which divided up people.

- ❖ Strong grass root leaders who could mobilize commoners were very rare.
- ❖ The whites put up many restrictions which made it difficult for nationalists to operate.
- ❖ The south African government always raid the SWAPO camps in Angola especially from 1978 when it's bases at Kassinga were attacked.
- ❖ In the early years, Namibia lacked strong and nationalistic leaders because Sam Nujoma and Kutako came very later after 1960.
- ❖ Illiteracy and backwardness of the Namibian population.
- ❖ Lack of support from some African government in the fight against the Whites e.g Zaire and Malawi.
- ❖ The geographical location of Namibia i.e it's a desert country which made it difficult for guerilla warfare.
- ❖ The whites were stubborn and refused to bow down to the UN and OAU pressure.
- ❖ The weakness of OAU i.e it lacked an army of its own to help the Namibians in their struggle.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. C) What were the methods used by the Namibian in their struggle for independence?/ How did Namibia attain her independence?

INTRODUCTION.

- They used both diplomacy and violent

BODY

- ❖ Formation of political parties e.g SWAPO of Sam Nujoma and SWANU of Kutako which were very instrumental in mobilizing masses.
- ❖ Formation of a guerilla force (Rebel band) in Angola at Kassinga to fight the South African government militarily.
- ❖ The activities of the international court of justice of Hague in condemning South Africa rule in Namibia boosted the struggle.
- ❖ Use of OAU where OAU members states pressurized the South African government to grant independence to Namibia.
- ❖ They used military wings of PAC (POQO) and "Spear of the nation" of ANC to help them in their struggle.
- ❖ They sent Reverend Michael Scot to the UN to appeal for support from UN member states to help them in their struggle.
- ❖ They organized strikes and riots for example the Nama- Herero and the Ovambo against the South Africa regime.

- ❖ They burnt down hospitals, administrative centers and other public work of South African government in order to weaken her.
- ❖ In 1974, the UN security council put an arms embargo on South Africa to force her grant independence to Namibia.
- ❖ Again in 1974, the UN security council passed a resolution forcing South Africa out of Namibia.
- ❖ In 1977, they passed the Tornhalle's proposal which was not supporting full independence to Namibia.
- ❖ The role played by South African prime minister Vooster, who promised to and started working towards Namibia's independence.
- ❖ The 1972 constitutional reforms that setup an advisory council as a way forward.
- ❖ They called for support of US and Cuba to help them in the struggle.
- ❖ In 1990, free and fair elections were held in which Sam Nujoma's SWAPO won and became the 1st president of the independent Namibia.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. A) Why were the British not very interested in Botswana at first?

INTRODUCTION

- Botswana is the land of Bechuanas inhabited by many ethnic groups though the Bamangwato were the most dominant.
- Before 1885, the British showed little interest in Botswana because of the following

BODY

- ❖ Botswana had little mineral wealth to attract strong British interest.
- ❖ The Portuguese interest in Botswana scared away the British because they did not want to clash with Portugal.
- ❖ The German missionaries and traders had settled in some of Botswana, making her a German area of influence.
- ❖ The Boers in Transvaal had also shown interest in the country increasing the competition.
- ❖ The Boer settlement of Stellaland and Goshen near Botswana created insecurity in the country which scared the British.
- ❖ The British were more concerned with strengthening their control in South Africa and Rhodesia.
- ❖ The local Bechuanaland chiefs showed some resistance to foreign intrusion which drove them away.
- ❖ The British did not want to burden their taxpayers with a non – profitable colony.
- ❖ The British were also driven by the need to annex Transvaal especially after the mineral discovery.

- ❖ The German traders who had settled at Walvis Bay allied with German politicians to start threatening British interest in the country.
- ❖ Before 1885, the Germans had claimed part of Botswana which scared the British.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. B) Why then did the British annex Botswana in 1885?

INTRODUCTION

- The British annexed Botswana in 1885 due to the political, economical and humanitarian motives.

BODY

- ❖ The 1884 German annexation of Namibia threatened the British because they hated the possible German expansion into Botswana
- ❖ The British thought that the German might come with an agreement with Transvaal government to divide Bechuanaland which made them more aggressive.
- ❖ Salisbury, the British Prime minister wanted north ward pass from the cape through Botswana to connect the Northern British colonies.
- ❖ The British did not want the Transvaal Boer to control Botswana because it was their route to Matabeleland (The Ndebele Kingdom).
- ❖ The British wanted to protect the British settlers and businessmen who had settled in Botswana.
- ❖ The British need to consolidate their interest in South Africa made them to occupy Botswana.
- ❖ British colonialists in South Africa pressurized and lobbied the British parliament for the occupation of Botswana.
- ❖ The British South African Company discovered that Botswana had some minerals among the Bamangwato.

A conclusion is required.

Qn. B) How did Botswana attain her independence?

- ❖ The struggle for the independence of Botswana was a long story which started a time of colonisation in 1885 when the British annexed the country.
- ❖ And in 1895, Botswana was incorporated into Cape colony something which the Bechuana chiefs highly opposed.
- ❖ However, serious independence struggles started after the end of second world war.
- ❖ In 1920, two advisory councils had been put up one for the Europeans and other for Africans to discuss the possible independence of Botswana.
- ❖ In 1950, these councils began making arrangements for independence of Botswana like the formation of a joint advisory council.

- ❖ In 1959, the political party i.e Bechuanaland protectorate party (BPP) was formed and it was to preserve chiefly powers.
- ❖ In 1960, a new constitution created a legislative council, an advisory executive and African council.
- ❖ In December 1960, the Bechuanaland people's party was formed by K.T Motsete who opposed chiefly powers.
- ❖ However, in 1962 his party split and the Bechuanaland Democratic Party emerged under Serets Khama.
- ❖ In 1965, elections were organized and the Bechuanaland People's party was defeated by Bechuanaland Democratic Party.
- ❖ And in 1965, internal self government was granted and the executive council was replaced by a cabinet and and chief Seretse Khama became the new head.
- ❖ As a prime minister Seretse Khama asked the British to grant independence to Botswana
- ❖ On 30th September 1996 Bechuanaland became under Seretse Khama as it's first president and the name Bechuanaland was changed to Botswana.

A conclusion is required.